





---


### View a full-screen weather map



1. Open the Weather app  on your iPhone.
  2. Select a location, then do either of the following:
    - Tap  at the bottom of the screen.
    - Scroll down, then tap the weather map.
-

## Change the map display

1. While viewing a full-screen map, do any of the following to adjust the display:

- *Change the map display to temperature, precipitation, air quality, or wind:* Tap .


While viewing the precipitation map, tap  to change the view between 12-Hour Forecast and Next-Hour Forecast (not available in all countries or regions).

- *Move the map:* Touch the screen and drag your finger.
- *Zoom in and out:* Pinch the screen.
- *View a location from your weather list:* Tap .
- *Return to your current location:* Tap .
- *Add a location to your weather list, view its current conditions, or view it in Maps:* Touch and hold the location.

2. Tap Done to close the map.





---

## Manage weather notifications on iPhone

You can receive notifications from the Weather app  when precipitation and certain severe weather events are forecasted in your current location. You can also receive notifications for locations in your weather list (not available in all countries or regions).

---

## Turn on weather notifications




1. Go to Settings  > Privacy & Security > Location Services > Weather, then tap Always.
2. Turn on Precise Location to receive the most accurate notifications for your current location.
3. Open the Weather app  on your iPhone, then tap  to display your weather list.
4. Tap , then tap Notifications.

If prompted, allow notifications from the Weather app.

5. Below Current Location, turn on notifications for Severe Weather and Next-Hour Precipitation (green is on).
6. Tap Done.

---

## Turn on weather notifications for locations in your weather list

1. Open the Weather app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  to display your weather list.
3. Tap , then tap Notifications.

If prompted, allow notifications from the Weather app.

4. Below Your Locations, tap a location, then turn on notifications for Severe Weather and Next-Hour Precipitation (green is on).
5. Tap Done.

---

*Note:* Weather notifications aren't available in all countries or regions.

## Use Weather widgets on iPhone

Use a Weather widget to check the forecast at a glance on your iPhone Home Screen. You can choose the size of the Weather widget and the amount of information it displays. See [Add a widget to your Home Screen](#).

**Tip:** You can add more than one Weather widget to your Home Screen—and choose a different size for each—so you can quickly see weather conditions and forecasts in different locations.



### Change the locations shown in the Weather widget

You can change the location that a Weather widget displays on your iPhone Home Screen.


1. Touch and hold the Weather widget on your Home Screen.
2. Tap Edit widget.
3. Tap My Location, then tap the new location you want to display.










*Note:* Location options are generated from your [weather list](#).

4. Tap the screen outside the widget to return to your iPhone Home Screen.

Weather widgets are also available for the iPhone Lock Screen. See [Create a custom iPhone Lock Screen](#).

## Learn the weather icons on iPhone

The icons in the Weather app  indicate different weather conditions, like fog or haze. Here's a list of some of the weather icons and what they mean.

Icon	Description
	Sunrise
	Sunset
	Clear / Mostly clear
	Partly cloudy
	Haze
	Fog
	Windy / Breezy
	Cloudy
	Thunderstorm
	Rain



---

Heavy rain



---

Drizzle / Freezing drizzle



---

Snow



---

Heavy snow / Blizzard



---

Freezing rain / Sleet / Wintry mix



---

Clear / Mostly clear (night)



---

Partly cloudy (night)



---

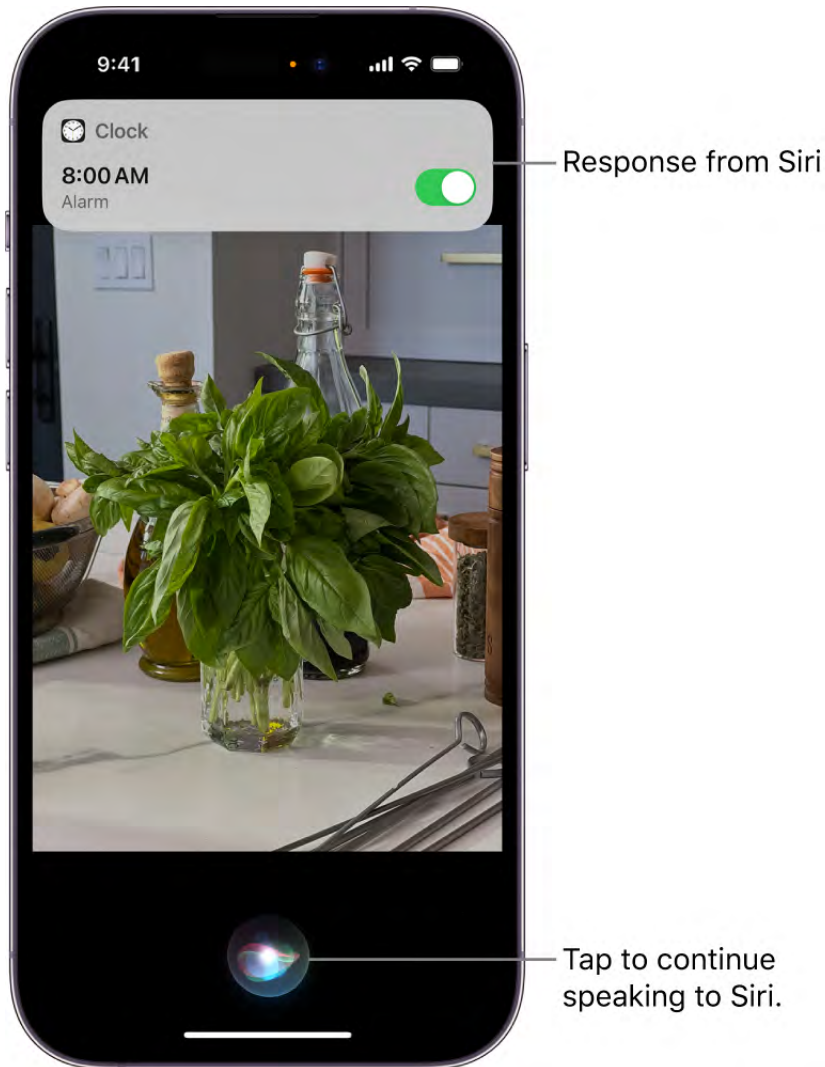
Drizzle (night)




# Siri

## Use Siri on iPhone

Get everyday tasks done with just your voice. Use Siri to translate a phrase, set an alarm, find a location, report on the weather, and more.




*Note:* If you make [back-to-back requests](#), you don't need to tap the button  between requests.

### Set up Siri

If you didn't set up Siri when you first set up your iPhone, do any of the following:

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

- *If you want to activate Siri with your voice:* Go to Settings  > Siri & Search, tap "Listen for," then choose "Hey Siri" or "Siri" (if you have that option).

*Note:* The option to say just "Siri" is available on supported iPhone models in some languages and regions.

- *If you want to activate Siri with a button:* Go to Settings > Siri & Search, then turn on Press Side Button for Siri (on an iPhone with Face ID) or Press Home for Siri (on an iPhone with a Home button).

To change additional Siri settings, see [Change Siri settings on iPhone](#).


---

## Activate Siri with your voice

When you activate Siri with your voice, Siri responds out loud.

Say "Hey Siri," then ask a question or make a request.

For example, say something like "Hey Siri, what's the weather for today?" or "Hey Siri, set an alarm for 8 a.m."

**Tip:** To prevent iPhone from responding to "Siri" or "Hey Siri," place your iPhone face down, or go to Settings  > Siri & Search, tap "Listen for," then choose Off.

You can also say "Hey Siri" to activate Siri while you're wearing supported AirPods. See [Set up Siri](#) in the AirPods User Guide.

---

## Activate Siri with a button

When you activate Siri with a button, Siri responds silently when iPhone is in [silent mode](#). When silent mode is off, Siri responds out loud. To change this behavior, see [Change how Siri responds](#).

1. Do one of the following:

- *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Press and hold the side button.
- *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Press and hold the Home button.
- *With EarPods:* Press and hold the center or call button.
- *With CarPlay:* Press and hold the voice command button on the steering wheel, or touch and hold the Home button on the CarPlay Home Screen. (See [Use Siri to Control CarPlay](#).)



DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL


- **With Siri Eyes Free:** Press and hold the voice command button on your steering wheel.
2. **Ask a question or make a request.**

For example, say something like "What's 18 percent of 225?" or "Set the timer for 3 minutes."



You can also activate Siri with a touch on supported AirPods. See [Set up Siri](#) in the AirPods User Guide.

### Make multiple requests back to back

With iOS 17, you can make follow-up requests without having to reactivate Siri for each one. (Available on supported iPhone models in some countries or regions.)


1. Activate Siri [with your voice](#) or [with a button](#) , then make a request.
2. Immediately after you make the request, make another one.

### Make a correction if Siri misunderstands you

- **Rephrase your request:** Tap , then repeat your request in a different way.
- **Spell out part of your request:** Tap , then repeat your request by spelling out any words that Siri didn't understand. For example, say "Call," then spell the person's name.
- **Change a message before sending it:** Say "Change it."
- **Edit your request with text:** If you see your request onscreen, you can edit it. Tap the request, then use the onscreen keyboard.

**Tip:** To correct your request without reactivating Siri, make the corrected request immediately after the original one. (Available on supported iPhone models in some countries and regions.)

### Type instead of speaking to Siri

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Siri, then turn on Type to Siri.
2. To type a request, activate Siri, then use the keyboard and text field to ask a question or make a request.

## More about Siri

Siri is designed to protect your information, and to let you choose what you share. To learn more, see the [Ask Siri, Dictation & Privacy website](#).

To learn how Siri works, see the [Improve Siri and Dictation & Privacy website](#).

For some requests, iPhone must be [connected to the internet](#). Cellular charges may apply.

---

If Siri doesn't work as expected on your iPhone, see [this Apple Support article](#).

## Find out what Siri can do on iPhone

Use Siri on iPhone to get information and perform tasks. Siri and its response appear on top of what you're currently doing, allowing you to refer to information onscreen.

Siri is interactive. When Siri displays a web link, you can tap it to see more information in your default web browser. When the onscreen response from Siri includes buttons or controls, you can tap them to take further action. And you can tap Siri again to ask another question or do an additional task for you.

Below are some examples of what you can use Siri to do. Additional examples appear throughout this guide. You can also discover Siri capabilities on your iPhone and in apps by asking "Hey Siri, what can I do here?"

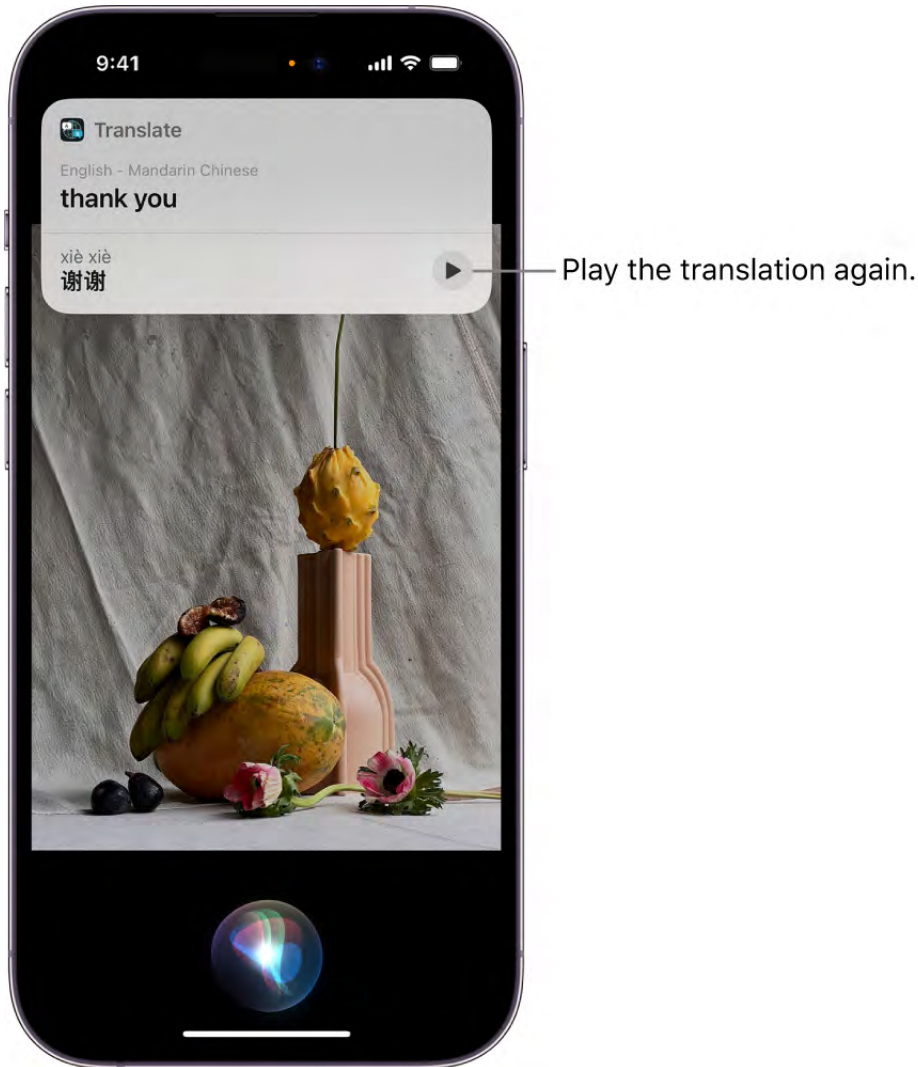
---

### Use Siri to answer questions

Use Siri to quickly check facts, do calculations, or translate a phrase into another language. Say something like:

- "Hey Siri, what causes a rainbow?"
- "Hey Siri, what does a cat sound like?"
- "Hey Siri, what's the derivative of cosine x?"
- "Hey Siri, how do you say Thank You in Mandarin?"

**COMMENT:** #ba #siri #queries



## Use Siri with apps

You can use Siri to control apps with your voice. Say something like:

- "Hey Siri, set up a meeting with Gordon at 9" to create an event in Calendar.
- "Hey Siri, add artichokes to my groceries list" to add an item to Reminders.
- "Hey Siri, send a message to PoChun saying love you heart emoji" to send a text using Messages.
- "Hey Siri, what's my update?" to get an update about the weather in your area, the news, your reminders and calendar events, and more.

For more examples, see any of the following:

- [Announce calls, messages, and more with Siri on iPhone](#)

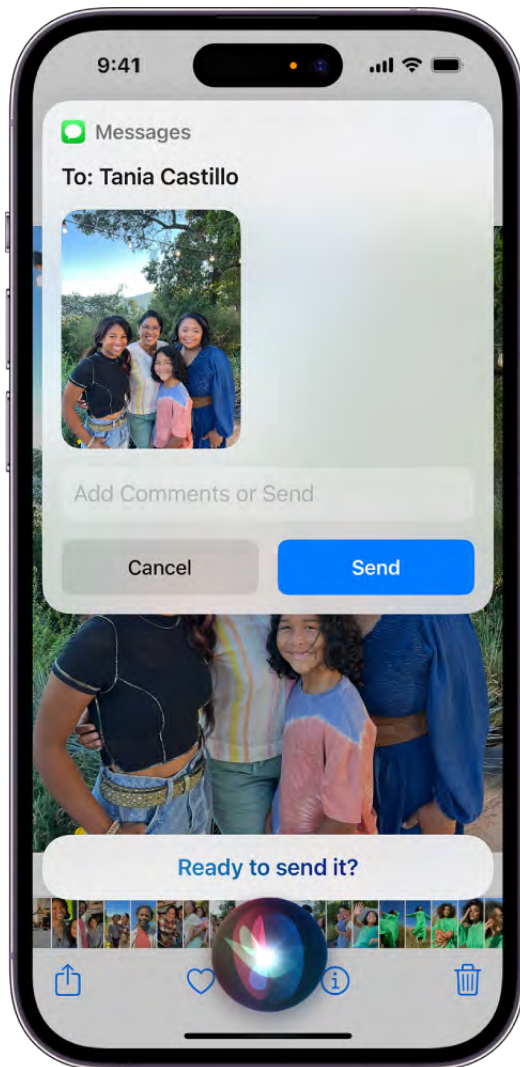
DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

- [Use Siri to play music on iPhone](#) and [Listen to music with Apple Music Voice on iPhone](#)
  - [Control your home using Siri on iPhone](#)
  - [Get travel directions on iPhone](#)
  - [Add Siri Shortcuts on iPhone](#)
- 

### Use Siri to share information with contacts

You can share onscreen items like photos, webpages, content from Apple Music or Apple Podcasts, Maps locations, and more with [people in your contacts](#).

For example, when looking at a photo in your Photo library, say something like “Hey Siri, send this to mom” to create a new message with the photo.



## Personalize your experience with Siri

The more you use Siri, the better it knows what you need. You can also tell Siri about yourself and change how and when Siri responds. See any of the following:

- [Siri Suggestions on iPhone](#)
- [Tell Siri about yourself on iPhone](#)
- [Change Siri settings on iPhone](#)

You can also [use accessibility features with Siri](#).

---



Siri is designed to protect your information, and you can choose what you share. To learn more, see the [Ask Siri, Dictation & Privacy website](#).

## Tell Siri about yourself on iPhone


You can provide information to Siri—including things like your home and work addresses, and your relationships—for a more personalized experience so you can say things like “Give me driving directions home” and “FaceTime mom.”

---

### Tell Siri who you are

1. Open Contacts , then [fill out your contact information](#).
  2. Go to Settings  > Siri & Search > My Information, then tap your name.
- 

### Tell Siri how to say your name

1. Open Contacts , then tap your contact card.
2. Tap Edit, scroll down and tap “add field,” select a pronunciation name field, then type how to say your name.

You can also add a pronunciation for any other contact card in Contacts. See [Edit contacts on iPhone](#).

---


### Tell Siri about a relationship

Say something like “Hey Siri, Eliza Block is my wife” or “Hey Siri, Ashley Kamin is my mom.”

**COMMENT:** #ba #siri #queries

---

## Keep what Siri knows about you up to date on your Apple devices

On each device, go to Settings , then sign in with the same Apple ID.


If you use iCloud, your Siri settings stay up to date across your Apple devices using end-to-end encryption.

If you don't want Siri personalization to stay up to date across iPhone and your other devices, you can disable Siri in iCloud settings. Go to Settings > [your name] > iCloud, then turn off Siri.

*Note:* If you have Location Services turned on, the location of your device at the time you make a request is also sent to Apple to help Siri improve the accuracy of its response to your requests. To deliver relevant responses, Apple may use the IP address of your internet connection to approximate your location by matching it to a geographic region. See [Control the location information you share on iPhone](#).

---

## Announce calls, messages, and more with Siri on iPhone


Siri can announce calls and notifications from apps like Messages  on supported headphones and when [using CarPlay](#). You can answer or reply using your voice without needing to say "Hey Siri."

Announce Calls and Announce Notifications also work with supported third-party apps.

---


### Have Siri announce calls

With Announce Calls, Siri identifies incoming phone calls and FaceTime calls, which you can accept or decline using your voice.

1. Go to Settings  > Siri & Search > Announce Calls, then choose an option.
  2. When a call comes in, Siri identifies the caller, and asks if you want to answer the call. Say "yes" to accept the call or "no" to decline it.
-

## Have Siri announce notifications

Siri can automatically announce incoming notifications from apps like Messages and Reminders. Siri automatically enables app notifications for apps that use time-sensitive notifications, but you can change the settings at any time. To learn more about time-sensitive notifications, see [Set up a Focus on iPhone](#).

1. Go to Settings  > Siri & Search > Announce Notifications, then turn on Announce Notifications.
2. Tap an app you want Siri to announce notifications from, then turn on Announce Notifications.

For some apps, you can also choose whether to announce all notifications or only time-sensitive notifications.

For apps where you can send a reply, like Messages, Siri repeats what you said, then asks for confirmation before sending your reply. To send replies without waiting for confirmation, turn on Reply Without Confirmation.

---

## Add Siri Shortcuts on iPhone

Apps can offer shortcuts for things you do frequently. You can use Siri to initiate these shortcuts with just your voice.

Some apps have Siri Shortcuts set up automatically. You can also create your own.

---

### Add a suggested shortcut

Tap Add to Siri when you see a suggestion for a shortcut, then follow the onscreen instructions to record a phrase of your choice that performs the shortcut.

You can also use the Shortcuts app to create a new shortcut that uses Siri, or to manage, re-record, and delete existing Siri Shortcuts. See the [Shortcuts User Guide](#).

---

### Use a shortcut

Activate Siri, then speak your phrase for the shortcut. See [Use Siri on iPhone](#).

---

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

Based on your routines and how you use your apps, Siri also suggests shortcuts on the Home Screen, the Lock Screen, and when you start a search. To turn off shortcut suggestions for an app, see [Change Siri settings on iPhone](#).

## Siri Suggestions on iPhone

Siri makes suggestions for what you might want to do next, such as call into a meeting or confirm an appointment, based on your routines and how you use your apps.


For example, Siri might help when you do any of the following:

- *Glance at the Lock Screen or start a search:* As Siri learns your routines, you get suggestions for just what you need, at just the right time.
- *Create email and events:* When you start adding people to an email or calendar event, Siri suggests the people you included in previous emails or events.
- *Receive calls:* If you get an incoming call from an unknown number, Siri lets you know who might be calling—based on phone numbers included in your emails.
- *Type:* As you enter text, Siri can suggest names of movies, places—anything you viewed on iPhone recently. If you tell a friend you're on your way, Siri can even suggest your estimated arrival time.
- *Confirm an appointment or book a flight on a travel website:* Siri asks if you want to add it to your calendar.

---

### Turn Siri Suggestions on or off for an app

Siri Suggestions are on by default for your apps. You can turn them off or change the settings at any time.

1. Go to Settings  > Siri & Search, scroll down, then select an app.
2. Turn settings on or off.

---

### Change where Siri Suggestions appear

Go to Settings  > Siri & Search, then turn on or off any of the following:

- Allow Notifications
- Show in App Library & Spotlight



- Show When Sharing
  - Show When Listening
- 

Your personal information—which is encrypted and remains private—stays up to date across all your devices where you're signed in with the same Apple ID. As Siri learns about you on one device, your experience with Siri is improved on your other devices. If you don't want Siri personalization to update across your devices, you can disable Siri in iCloud settings. See [Keep what Siri knows about you up to date on your Apple devices](#).

Siri is designed to protect your information, and you can choose what you share. To learn more, see the [Siri Suggestions, Search & Privacy website](#).

## Use Siri in your car

With CarPlay or Siri Eyes Free, you can keep focused on the road by using Siri to make calls, send text messages, play music that's on your iPhone, get directions, and use other iPhone features.

CarPlay (available in select cars) takes the things you want to do with your iPhone while driving and puts them on your car's built-in display. CarPlay uses Siri, so you can control CarPlay with just your voice. See [Use Siri to Control CarPlay](#).

With Siri Eyes Free (available in select cars), use your voice to control features of your iPhone without looking at or touching iPhone. To connect iPhone to your car, use Bluetooth® (refer to the user guide that came with your car if you need to). To activate Siri, press and hold the voice command button on your steering wheel until you hear the Siri tone, then make a request.

**WARNING:** For important information about avoiding distractions that could lead to dangerous situations, see [Important safety information for iPhone](#).

## Change Siri settings on iPhone

You can change the voice for Siri, prevent access to Siri when your device is locked, and more.

For information about how to set up and use Siri, see [Use Siri on iPhone](#). To change settings for Siri Suggestions, see [Siri Suggestions on iPhone](#).

---

## Change when Siri responds

You can customize if Siri responds to your voice or a button press. You can also choose what language Siri responds to.

Go to Settings  > Siri & Search, then do any of the following:


- *Prevent Siri from responding to the voice request "Hey Siri":* Turn off Listen for "Hey Siri."
- *Prevent Siri from responding to the side or Home button:* Turn off Press Side Button for Siri (on an iPhone with Face ID) or Press Home for Siri (on an iPhone with a Home button).
- *Prevent access to Siri when iPhone is locked:* Turn off Allow Siri When Locked.
- *Change the language Siri responds to:* Tap Language, then select a new language.

You can also activate Siri by typing. See [Type instead of speaking to Siri](#).

---

## Change the voice for Siri

You can change the Siri voice (not available for all languages).

1. Go to Settings  > Siri & Search.
2. Tap Siri Voice, then choose a different variety or voice.

---




## Change how Siri responds

Siri can respond out loud or silently (with text onscreen). You can also see your request onscreen.

Go to Settings  > Siri & Search, then do any of the following:

- *Change when Siri provides voice responses:* Tap Siri Responses, then choose an option below Spoken Responses.
  - *Always see the response from Siri onscreen:* Tap Siri Responses, then turn on Always Show Siri Captions.
  - *See your request onscreen:* Tap Siri Responses, then turn on Always Show Speech.
-

## Change Siri settings for Phone, FaceTime, and Messages

You can perform tasks for Phone , FaceTime , and Messages  with just your voice. With Siri, you can hang up calls and skip the confirmation step when sending messages. You can enable these features in Settings.

Go to Settings  > Siri & Search, then do any of the following:


- *Hang up Phone and FaceTime calls:* Tap Call Hang Up, then turn on Call Hang Up. For more information, see [End phone and FaceTime calls](#).
- *Send messages without confirmation:* Tap Automatically Send Messages, then turn on Automatically Send Messages. See [Send and reply to messages on iPhone](#).

On supported headphones, Siri can also [announce calls, messages, and more](#).

---

## Change which apps appear in search

You can change which apps appear when you search with Siri.

1. Go to Settings  > Siri & Search, then scroll down and select an app.
  2. Turn settings on or off.
- 

## Retrain Siri with your voice

Go to Settings  > Siri & Search, turn off Listen for “Hey Siri,” then turn on Listen for “Hey Siri” again.

---

To change Siri accessibility settings, see [Change Siri accessibility settings on iPhone](#).

If Siri doesn't work as expected on your iPhone, see the Apple Support article [If “Hey Siri” isn't working on your iPhone or iPad](#).

# iPhone safety features


## Use SOS to contact emergency services on your iPhone

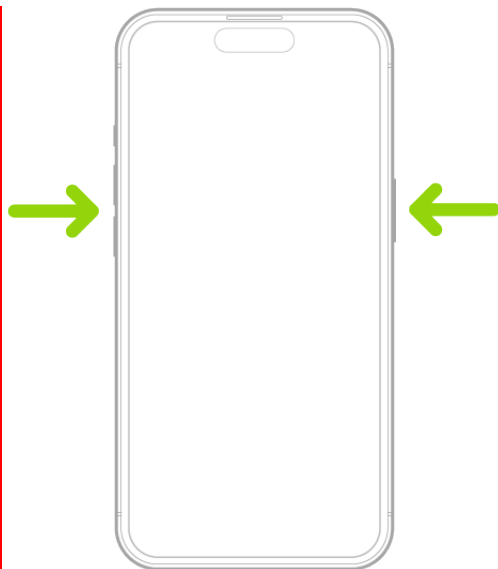
In case of emergency, use your iPhone to quickly and easily call for help and alert your emergency contacts (provided that cellular service is available).

*Note:* If you have iPhone 14 or later (any model), you may be able to contact emergency services via satellite if cell service isn't available. See [Use Emergency SOS via satellite on your iPhone](#).

### Quickly call emergency services (all countries or regions except India)

- Simultaneously press and hold the side button and either volume button until the sliders appear and the countdown on Emergency SOS ends, then release the buttons.

Or, you can enable iPhone to start Emergency SOS when you quickly press the side button five times. Go to Settings  > Emergency SOS, then turn on Call with 5 Presses.



After an emergency call ends, your iPhone alerts your emergency contacts with a text message, unless you choose to cancel. Your iPhone sends your current location (if available) and—for a period of time after you enter SOS mode—your emergency contacts receive updates when your location changes.

---

## Quickly call emergency services (India)


- Quickly press the side button 3 times until the sliders appear and the countdown on Emergency SOS ends.
- If you've turned on Accessibility Shortcut, simultaneously press and hold the side button and either volume button until the sliders appear and the countdown on Emergency SOS ends, then release the buttons.

By default, iPhone plays a warning sound, starts a countdown, then calls the emergency services.

After an emergency call ends, your iPhone alerts your emergency contacts with a text message, unless you choose to cancel. Your iPhone sends your current location (if available) and—for a period of time after you enter SOS mode—your emergency contacts receive updates when your location changes.


---

## Dial the emergency number when your iPhone is locked


1. On the Passcode screen, tap Emergency.
2. Dial the emergency number (for example, 911 in the U.S.), then tap .

---

## Text Emergency Services (not available in all countries or regions)

1. Open the Messages app  and type 911 or your local emergency services number in the To field.
  2. Type your emergency.
  3. Tap the send button.
-

## Change your Emergency SOS settings

1. Go to Settings  > Emergency SOS.
  2. Do any of the following:
    - *Turn “Call with Hold and Release” on or off:* Hold and release the side and volume buttons to start a countdown to call emergency services.
    - *Turn “Call with 5 presses” on or off:* Rapidly press the side button five times to start a countdown to call emergency services.
    - *Manage your emergency contacts:* In Health, tap Set Up Emergency Contacts or Edit Emergency Contacts. See [Set up and view your Medical ID](#).
-

## Important information about emergency calls on iPhone

- Some cellular networks may not accept an emergency call from iPhone if iPhone isn't activated, if iPhone isn't compatible with or configured to operate on a particular cellular network, or (when applicable) if iPhone doesn't have a SIM card or the SIM card is PIN-locked.
- In certain countries or regions, your location information (if determinable) may be accessed by emergency service providers when you make an emergency call.
- Review your carrier's emergency calling information to understand the limits of emergency calling over Wi-Fi.
- With CDMA, when an emergency call ends, iPhone enters *emergency call mode* for a few minutes to allow a callback from emergency services. During this time, data transmission and text messages are blocked.
- After making an emergency call, certain call features that block or silence incoming calls may be disabled for a short period of time to allow a callback from emergency services. These include Do Not Disturb, Silence Unknown Callers, and Screen Time.
- On an iPhone with Dual SIM, if you don't turn on Wi-Fi Calling for a line, any incoming phone calls on that line (including calls from emergency services) go directly to voicemail (if available from your carrier) when the other line is in use; you won't receive missed call notifications.

If you set up conditional call forwarding (if available from your carrier) from one line to another when a line is busy or not in service, the calls don't go to voicemail; contact your carrier for setup information.

- On an iPhone that supports USB 3 speeds, USB 3 data will be disabled once an emergency session (call or text) has been triggered, and will remain disabled for up to 5 minutes from the end of the session. This time varies by country or region. To continue using your accessory, disconnect and reconnect your USB 3 device after this period.

---

## Use Emergency SOS via satellite on your iPhone

On iPhone 14 or later (any model), you can use Emergency SOS via satellite to text emergency services when you're outside of cellular and Wi-Fi coverage.


DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

*Note:* Emergency SOS via satellite isn't available in all countries or regions. For information about Emergency SOS via satellite availability see [this Apple Support article](#).

---

### **Before you disconnect from cellular and Wi-Fi coverage**

If you're going somewhere that might not have cellular and Wi-Fi coverage, create your Medical ID, add emergency contacts, and try the Emergency SOS demo before you go.

1. Go to Settings  > Emergency SOS.
2. Scroll down and tap Try Demo.

To create your Medical ID and add emergency contacts, see [Set up and view your Medical ID](#).

*Note:* The Emergency SOS demo doesn't start a call to emergency services.

---

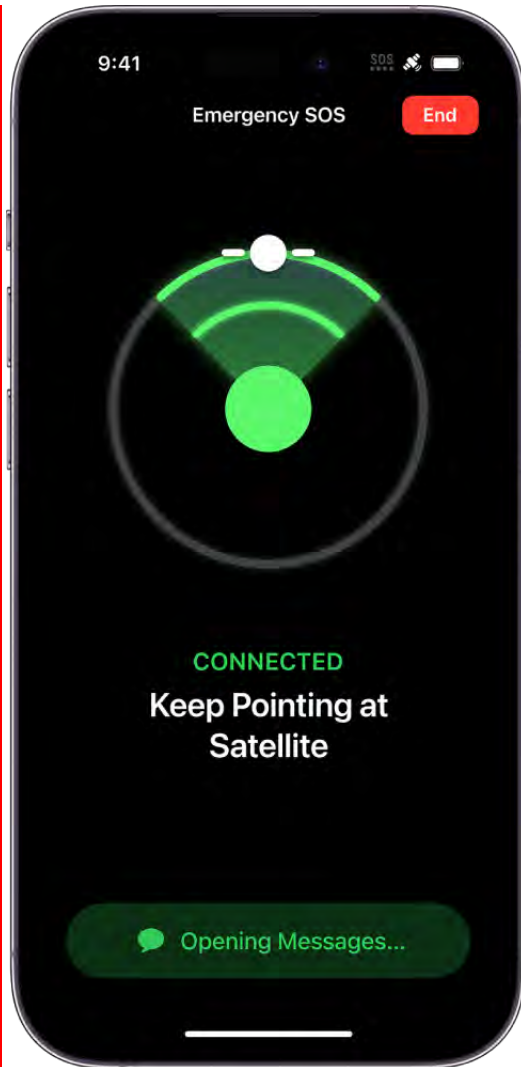
### **Connect to Emergency SOS via satellite on your iPhone**

If you need emergency services and you don't have a cellular or Wi-Fi connection, you can use Emergency SOS via satellite.

1. Try calling 911 or emergency services. Even if your normal cellular carrier network isn't available, iPhone will attempt to route the 911 call through other networks, if available.
2. If the call doesn't go through, tap Emergency Text via Satellite to text emergency services. You can also go to the Messages app and text 911 or SOS, then tap Emergency Services.
3. Tap Report Emergency and follow the onscreen instructions.




DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL



**Important:** To help you connect to a satellite, make sure to hold your phone naturally in your hand—you don't need to raise your arm or hold your phone up, but make sure your phone has a clear line of sight to the sky. If you're under heavy foliage or surrounded by other obstructions, you might not be able to connect to a satellite.

After you're connected, your iPhone starts a text conversation by sharing critical information like your Medical ID and emergency contact information (if you [set them up](#)), your answers to the emergency questionnaire, your location (including elevation), and your iPhone's battery level. You can also choose to share the information you send to emergency services with your emergency contacts.

---

To learn how to proactively share your location in the Find My app  when you're in a location without cellular or Wi-Fi coverage, see [Send your location via satellite in Find My on iPhone](#).

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

For information about Emergency SOS via satellite and privacy, see [this Apple Support article](#).



## Request Roadside Assistance via satellite on your iPhone

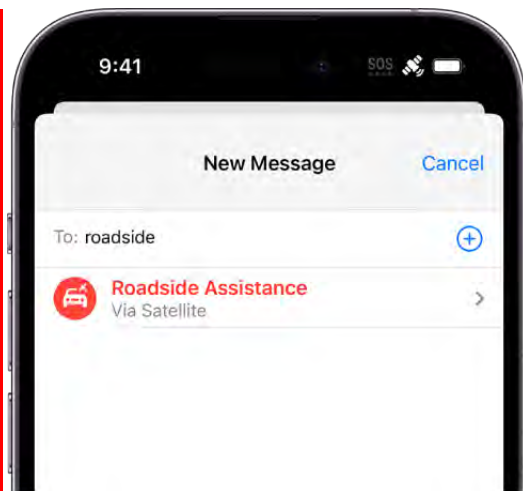
On iPhone 14 or later (any model), you can request Roadside Assistance via satellite when you're outside of cellular and Wi-Fi coverage.

*Note:* Roadside Assistance via satellite isn't available in all countries or regions, and requires iOS 17 or later.

---

### Request Roadside Assistance via satellite on your iPhone

1. Open the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  at the top of the screen, then type "roadside" into the address field.



3. Tap Roadside Assistance and follow the onscreen instructions.

**Important:** To help you connect to a satellite, make sure to hold your phone naturally in your hand—you don't need to raise your arm or hold your phone up, but make sure your phone has a clear line of sight to the sky. If you're under heavy foliage or surrounded by other obstructions, you might not be able to connect to a satellite.

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL



## Set up and view your Medical ID

A Medical ID provides information about you that may be important in an emergency, like allergies, medical conditions, and your emergency contacts. Your iPhone and Apple Watch can display this information so that it's available for someone attending to you in an emergency and your emergency contacts can be notified if you [use Emergency SOS via satellite](#).

---

### Create your Medical ID

Set up a Medical ID in the Health app .

1. Open the Health app on your iPhone.
2. Tap your picture at the top right, then tap Medical ID.

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

3. Tap Get Started or Edit, then enter your information.
4. Below Emergency Contacts, tap Add Emergency Contact, then add your contacts.

After an emergency call ends, your iPhone alerts your emergency contacts with a text message, unless you choose to cancel. Your iPhone sends your current location (if available) and—for a period of time after you enter SOS mode—your emergency contacts receive updates when your location changes.

5. Tap Done.

**Tip:** To view your Medical ID from the Home Screen, touch and hold the Health app icon, then choose Medical ID.

---

### **Allow emergency services and first responders to access your Medical ID**

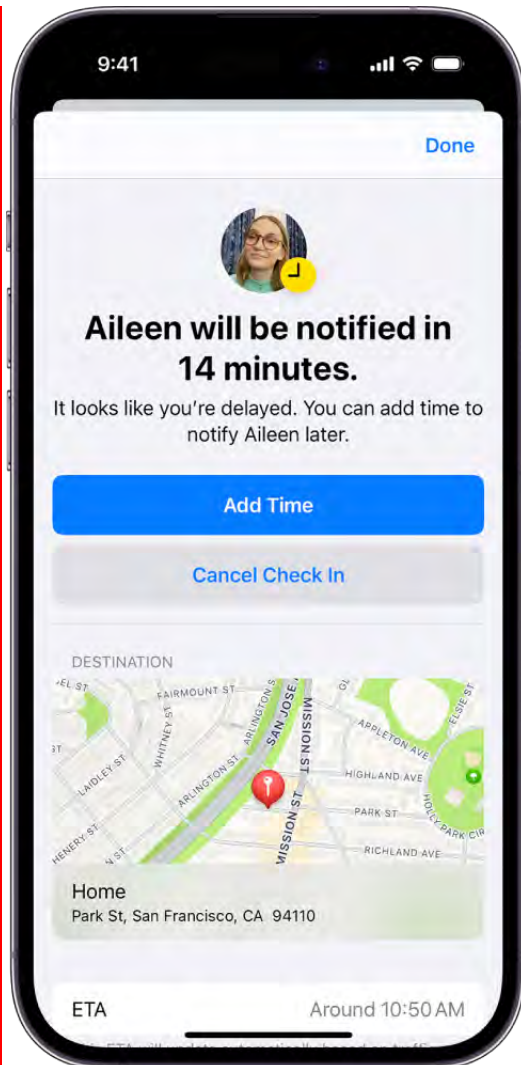
The information in your Medical ID can be shared automatically during an emergency call (U.S. and Canada only), and also appears on the Lock Screen of your iPhone and Apple Watch.

1. Open the Health app on your iPhone.
2. Tap your picture at the top right, then tap Medical ID.
3. Tap Edit, scroll to the bottom, then turn on Show When Locked and Emergency Call.

*Note:* A first responder views your Medical ID from the Lock Screen by swiping up or pressing the Home button (depending on your iPhone model), tapping Emergency on the passcode screen, then tapping Medical ID.

---

# Use Check In on iPhone to let your friends know you've arrived



*Note:* Check In isn't available in all countries or regions, and requires iOS 17 or later for both the sender and recipient.





## How Check In works

You can use Check In on iPhone to automatically notify a friend that your device has arrived or your activity is completed, and choose what details they can see if you don't successfully complete your Check In.

Similarly, if a friend sends you a Check In but their device hasn't arrived or their activity isn't completed as expected, you can view their location, battery percentage, cellular signal, and more.

---

## Send a Check In

1. Open the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  at the top of the screen and add a recipient, or select an existing conversation.
3. Tap , tap More, tap Check In, then tap Edit.
4. Choose one of the following:
  - *When I Arrive:* Specify your destination, how you're traveling (driving, transit, or walking), and add extra time if needed. Check In monitors your journey and notifies your friend if your device isn't progressing for an extended period of time or it doesn't reach your destination as expected. When you arrive at your destination successfully, the Check In automatically completes and notifies your friend that your device has arrived.
  - *After a timer:* Specify a period of time—for example, if you're meeting someone new. If you don't end the Check In before the time you set, Check In notifies your friend.
5. Tap .

If you either your device doesn't arrive at your destination or don't cancel the Check In, and you don't respond to the Check In prompts, the details of your device's journey will be sent to your friend.


To change the details you want to share with your friend if you don't complete your Check In as expected, see [Choose what data you share](#).

*Note:* If you start a Check In then lose service or your device powers off, your Check In recipient may get a delayed or early notification.

---


## Extend a Check In timer

If you need extra time for your Check In timer, you can extend your activity to let your friend know.

1. Open the Messages app  on your iPhone.
  2. Open the conversation with the friend you sent a Check In to.
  3. On the Check In message, tap Details, tap Add Time, then select one of the options.
-

## Cancel a Check In


If you've completed your journey or activity, you can cancel your Check In to let your friend know.

1. Open the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. Open the conversation with the friend you sent a Check In to.
3. On the Check In message, tap Details, then tap Cancel Check In and confirm.

---

## Choose what data you share

You can change the details you share with your friend during a Check In:

1. Go to Settings  > Messages.
2. Scroll down and tap Check In Data.
3. Choose what details you want to share if you don't complete your Check In as expected:

**Limited:** Share your current location, in addition to the network signal and battery details of your iPhone and Apple Watch.

**Full:** Share the data above (current location, network signal, and battery details), in addition to the route you've traveled and the last time you unlocked your iPhone or removed your Apple Watch.

---

# Manage Crash Detection on iPhone 14 or later

---

## What is Crash Detection?

If your iPhone 14 or later (any model) detects a severe car crash, it can help connect you to emergency services and notify your emergency contacts.

---

---

## How Crash Detection works


When your iPhone detects a severe car crash, it will display an alert and will automatically initiate an emergency phone call after 20 seconds unless you cancel. If you are unresponsive, your iPhone will play an audio message for emergency services, which informs them that you've been in a severe crash and gives them your latitudinal and longitudinal coordinates with an approximate search radius.

When a crash is detected, Crash Detection won't override any existing emergency calls placed by other means.

If you're in a severe car crash and unresponsive in a location without a cellular or Wi-Fi connection, iPhone will attempt to contact emergency services using [Emergency SOS via satellite](#), where available.

---

## Turn Crash Detection on or off

Crash Detection is on by default. You can turn off alerts and automatic emergency calls from Apple after a severe car crash in Settings  > Emergency SOS, then turn off Call After Severe Crash. If you have third-party apps registered to detect crashes on your device, they will still be notified.

---

## If you have CarPlay or Apple Watch

If your iPhone has Crash Detection turned on and is connected to your vehicle through CarPlay, the Crash Detection features (dialing emergency services) will go through your iPhone.

If you're wearing your Apple Watch at the time of the event, dialing emergency services will be placed by iPhone but Crash Detection features will be routed through Apple Watch.

---


For more information, see [this Apple Support article](#).

## Reset privacy and security settings in an emergency

You can use Safety Check on iPhone to quickly stop sharing your device access and personal information with others. Safety Check helps you quickly change your passcode and Apple ID password, stop sharing your location with Find My, restrict Messages and FaceTime to the device in your hand, and more.



DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

1. Go to Settings  > Privacy & Security > Safety Check.
  2. Tap Emergency Reset, tap Start Emergency Reset, then follow the onscreen instructions.
- 

You can also use Safety Check to periodically review and update the information you share with people, apps, and devices. To learn more about what Safety Check does, see [How Safety Check on iPhone works to keep you safe](#) in the Personal Safety User Guide.

**Important:** You might also be sharing information that Safety Check can't review or change—for example, accounts and passwords, social media sharing, and information shared from another device. To help you decide on additional steps for reducing the information you share, see [Additional considerations when using Safety Check](#) in the Personal Safety User Guide.

# Family Sharing

## Set up Family Sharing on iPhone

Family Sharing lets you and up to five other family members share access to Apple services, purchases, an iCloud storage plan, and more. You can even help locate each other's missing devices.

One adult family member—the *organizer*—invites other family members to participate. When family members join, Family Sharing is set up on everyone's devices automatically. The group then chooses which services and features they want to use and share.


Family Sharing is available on eligible devices. See the Apple Support article [System requirements for iCloud](#).



---

## Create a Family Sharing group

You only need to set up Family Sharing on one device. Then it's available on all your devices that are signed in with the same Apple ID.

1. Go to Settings  > [your name] > Family Sharing, then follow the onscreen instructions to set up your Family Sharing group.
2. Add one or more family members. When you add an adult family member, you can designate them as a parent or guardian. Learn about types of Family Sharing members.

You can also add family members later. See [Add a member to a Family Sharing group on iPhone](#).

3. Tap a feature you want to set up for your Family Sharing group, then follow the onscreen instructions.

To set up parental controls or Apple Cash for a child, tap their name, tap the feature, then follow the onscreen instructions.

You can see what you're sharing with your family and adjust sharing settings at any time.

To learn how to set up or join a Family Sharing group on all your devices, see the Apple Support article [Set up Family Sharing](#).


---


## What you can do with Family Sharing

With a Family Sharing group, you can set up or share the following:

- *Passwords and passkeys:* You can share passwords and passkeys with people in your family to access important accounts. See [Share passwords or passkeys with people you trust on iPhone](#).
- *An iCloud Drive folder:* Organize and share family documents, photos, and more. See [Share files and folders in iCloud Drive on iPhone](#).
- *Apple and App Store subscriptions:* You can share Apple subscriptions, including iCloud+, and eligible App Store subscriptions. See [Share Apple and App Store subscriptions with family members on iPhone](#).
- *Purchases:* You can share items purchased in the App Store, Apple Books, and Apple TV. All purchases are billed to the family organizer. See [Share App Store, Apple TV, and Apple Books purchases with Family Sharing on iPhone](#).

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

- *Locations:* When you share your location with your Family Sharing group, all family members, including any new members added later, can use the Find My app  to see your location and help locate a missing device. See [Share locations with family members and locate their lost devices on iPhone](#).
- *Apple Card and Apple Cash:* You can share Apple Card with trusted members of your Family Sharing group or set up an Apple Cash Family account for a child. See [Use Apple Cash and Apple Card with Family Sharing on iPhone \(U.S. only\)](#).
- *Parental controls:* You can manage your children's purchases, how they use their Apple devices, and more. See [Set up parental controls with Family Sharing on iPhone](#).
- *A device for your child:* You can set up a new iPhone or iPad for a child and customize parental controls. See [Set up a device for a child with Family Sharing on iPhone](#).

**Tip:** You can use Family Checklist to see tips and suggestions for Family Sharing features. Go to Settings  > Family, then tap Family Checklist.

---

## Add a member to a Family Sharing group on iPhone

With [Family Sharing](#), each family member joins the family group with their own Apple ID. That way you can share access to subscriptions and other features without sharing personal information like photos or documents.



The family organizer can easily invite family members who have an Apple ID or create an Apple ID for a child who doesn't have one yet.

Learn about types of Family Sharing members.

---

### Add a family member with an Apple ID

The organizer of the Family Sharing group can add a family member who has their own Apple ID.




1. Go to Settings  > Family, then tap  in the upper-right corner.
2. Tap Invite Others, then follow the onscreen instructions.

You can send the invitation using AirDrop, Messages, or Mail. If you're near the family member, you can also tap Invite in Person and ask the family member to enter their Apple ID and password on your device.

---

## Create an Apple ID for a child

If a child is too young to create their own Apple ID, the organizer, a parent, or a guardian can add the child to the Family Sharing group and create an Apple ID for them.

1. Go to Settings  > Family.
2. Do one of the following:
  - *If you're the organizer:* Tap , tap Create Child Account.  
  
*Note:* If your child already has an Apple ID, tap Invite Others. They can enter their Apple ID password on your device to accept the invitation.
  - *If you're a parent or guardian:* Tap .
3. Follow the onscreen instructions to finish creating the child account. You can set content restrictions, communication limits, and downtime; share your child's location with all members of the Family Sharing group, including any new members added later; and use Ask to Buy. You can change these settings at any time. For more information, see any of the following:
  - [Set up Screen Time for a family member on iPhone](#)
  - [Share locations with family members and locate their lost devices on iPhone](#)
  - [Apple Support article: Approve what kids buy with Ask to Buy](#)

For more information about child accounts and the age at which a child can create their own Apple ID, see the Apple Support article [Create an Apple ID for your child](#).

---

If you want to join an existing Family Sharing group, [ask the organizer to add you](#). You can only be a member of one Family Sharing group at a time. If you want to join a different group, leave your current group first. See [Leave a Family Sharing group](#).

## Leave or remove a member from a Family Sharing group on iPhone


In a [Family Sharing group](#), the organizer can remove members or disband the group, and family members (other than teens with parental controls or children) can remove themselves.

Learn about types of Family Sharing members.

---

### Remove a member from a family group

The organizer of a Family Sharing group can remove other members. When a family member is removed, they immediately lose access to shared subscriptions and content purchased by other members.

1. Go to Settings  > Family.
2. Tap [*member's name*], then tap Remove [*member's name*] from Family.

You can't remove a child from your Family Sharing group. However, you can move them to another group or delete their Apple ID. See the Apple Support article [Move a child to another group using Family Sharing](#).


If you turned on Screen Time for a teen, you need to turn off Screen Time settings before you can remove them from the group. See [Set up Screen Time for a family member on iPhone](#).

---

### Leave a Family Sharing group

When you leave a Family Sharing group, you stop sharing your purchases and subscriptions with family members and immediately lose access to any content they've shared.

*Note:* The organizer can't leave the Family Sharing group. If you want to change the organizer, you must disband the group, and have another adult create a new one.

1. Go to Settings  > Family.
  2. Tap [*your name*], then tap Stop Using Family Sharing.
- 

### Disband a Family Sharing group

When the family organizer turns off Family Sharing, all family members are removed from the group at the same time. When a Family Sharing group is disbanded, all members immediately lose access to the shared content and subscriptions.

*Note:* If a child is in the Family Sharing group, the organizer must move them to another group or delete their Apple ID before disbanding the group. See the Apple Support article [Move a child to another group using Family Sharing](#).

1. Go to Settings  > Family > [*your name*].

## 2. Tap Stop Using Family Sharing.

---

# Share Apple and App Store subscriptions with family members on iPhone


When you're in a [Family Sharing group](#), you can share Apple subscriptions and eligible App Store subscriptions with other family members.

If your Family Sharing group has [purchase sharing](#) turned on, any subscriptions shared with the group are billed directly to the organizer's default payment method.

*Note:* Not all services are available in all countries or regions, and some selections are subject to content restrictions set in Screen Time.

---

## Share Apple subscriptions

1. Go to Settings  > Family.
2. Tap Subscriptions, then do one of the following:
  - Tap a subscription you want to share, then follow the onscreen instructions.
  - Tap Manage Subscriptions, then tap a subscription.

See any of the following to learn more.

- *Apple Arcade:* See [Subscribe to Apple Arcade on iPhone](#). All members of your family can download and play Apple Arcade games from the App Store. Each player gets a personalized account—your progress is carried over between devices.
- *Apple Fitness+:* See [All about Apple Fitness+](#) in the Apple Watch User Guide. All members of your family can access workouts in the Fitness app on their iPhone or iPad.
- *Apple Music:* See [Subscribe to Apple Music on iPhone](#). With a family subscription, each family member gets their own music library and personal recommendations.
- *Apple News+:* See [Subscribe to Apple News+ on iPhone](#). All members of your family can read Apple News+ publications for no additional charge.


DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL


- *Apple TV+ and Apple TV channels:* See [Subscribe to Apple TV+, MLS Season Pass, and Apple TV channels on iPhone](#) and [Subscribe to Apple TV channels](#). Each family member can watch on their iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Mac, Apple TV, and supported smart TVs and streaming devices, using their own Apple ID and password.
- *iCloud+:* See [Subscribe to iCloud+ on iPhone](#). When you share iCloud+, all family members have access to iCloud+ features and storage. For storage, you only share the space—your photos and documents stay private and everyone keeps using their own accounts.

For information about combining your Apple subscriptions, see the Apple Support article [Bundle Apple subscriptions with Apple One](#).

---

### Share App Store subscriptions

You can choose which eligible App Store  subscriptions you share with family members. For information about the App Store, see [Get apps in the App Store on iPhone](#).

1. Go to Settings  > [your name] > Subscriptions.
2. Do either of the following:
  - *Share all new subscriptions:* Turn on Share with Family. When you purchase a new subscription that's eligible for sharing, it's shared with your Family Sharing members by default.
  - *Change the settings of a specific subscription:* Tap a subscription, then turn Share with Family on or off.

If you don't see Share with Family, the subscription isn't eligible for sharing.

---

## Share App Store, Apple TV, and Apple Books purchases with Family Sharing on iPhone

With [Family Sharing](#), the organizer can set up purchase sharing to share App Store, Apple Books, and Apple TV purchases.

The organizer adds a payment method that's shared with the family; when a family member makes a purchase, the organizer is billed. The purchased item is added to the initiating family member's account and eligible purchases are shared with the rest of the family.




DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

The family organizer can also require that children in the family group request approval for purchases or free downloads. See [Set up parental controls with Family Sharing on iPhone](#).

---

### Turn on purchase sharing

When the family organizer turns on purchase sharing, they pay for family members' purchases and must have a valid payment method on file.

1. Go to Settings  > Family.
  2. Tap Purchase Sharing, then follow the onscreen instructions.
- 

### Access shared content


When purchase sharing is turned on, you can download apps and play content that your family members buy. See any of the following Apple Support articles:

- [How to download apps and content that your family members purchased](#)
  - [What types of content can I share with my family?](#)
  - [If you can't find your family's shared content](#)
- 

### Turn off purchase sharing for yourself

You can turn off purchase sharing for yourself. Family Sharing members won't see your purchases, but you can still see items other members have shared with you.

*Note:* Even though your items aren't shared, any purchases you make still use the shared family payment method.

1. Go to Settings  > Family, then tap Purchase Sharing.
2. Tap [*your name*], then turn off Share Purchases.

If the organizer wants to turn off purchase sharing entirely, they can tap Stop Purchase Sharing.

If you don't want to share a specific item with your family members, see the Apple Support article [Hide and unhide music, movies, TV shows, audiobooks, and books](#).

---

You can also [share Apple and App Store subscriptions with family members](#).

# Share locations with family members and locate their lost devices on iPhone

With [Family Sharing](#), you can share your location with members of your Family Sharing group and help them find lost devices. When the family organizer sets up location sharing in Family Sharing settings, the organizer's location is automatically shared with everyone in the family, including any new members added later. Then, family members can choose whether or not to share their location.

---

## Share your location with family members


When you share locations with your family, they can [see your location in Find My](#). You can also [get notified when family members change their locations](#)—for example, if a child leaves school during school hours.

1. **|** Go to Settings > Family, then scroll down and tap Location Sharing.
2. Tap the name of a family member you want to share your location with.

You can repeat this step for each family member you want to share your location with. Each family member receives a message that you're sharing your location and can choose to share their location with you.

You can stop sharing your location with any family member at any time.

*Note:* Children and teens with [Screen Time turned on](#) may not be able to change their own location sharing settings.

To share your location, you must have Location Services turned on in Settings  > Privacy & Security. See [Control the location information you share on iPhone](#).

---

## Locate a family member's device

After you share your location with members of your Family Sharing group, they can help locate a missing device [added to the Find My app](#).

See [Locate a device in Find My on iPhone](#).

Your devices are at the top of the list, and your family members' devices are below yours.

---

## Ask a family member to share an AirTag with you


If you receive a notification in Find My that says AirTag Detected Near You or Unknown AirTag, you can ask the family member who owns it to share the AirTag with you.

1. Tap Ask Owner to Share AirTag.
2. Tap Ask Owner at the bottom of the screen.

---

You can also use [Find Devices on iCloud.com](#) to locate a family member's missing device. See [Locate a device in Find Devices on iCloud.com](#) in the iCloud User Guide.

## Use Apple Cash and Apple Card with Family Sharing on iPhone (U.S. only)


You can use Apple Cash and Apple Card with your [Family Sharing](#) group using the Wallet app  or in Settings > Family. The organizer of the Family Sharing group can set up Apple Cash for a child. They can also share Apple Card with trusted members of their Family Sharing group.

Learn about types of Family Sharing members.

---

### Set up Apple Cash Family

The family organizer can set up Apple Cash for a child. They can go to Settings > Family or Settings > Wallet to see the card balance, monitor transactions, and limit who the child can send money to. See [Manage your Apple Cash](#).

1. Go to Settings  > Family.
2. Tap the child for whom you want to set up Apple Cash.
3. Tap Apple Cash, then follow the onscreen instructions.

For more information about system requirements and how to manage Apple Cash accounts, see the Apple Support articles [Set up and use Apple Cash Family](#) and [View and limit your child or teen's Apple Cash activity](#).

---

## Set up Apple Card Family

You can share your Apple Card with family members, manage payments, and control account settings and limits for children who are 13 years or older. You can also review and manage everyone's details.

1. In Settings > Family, tap Share My Apple Card. The option only appears if you have Apple Card.
2. Follow the onscreen instructions.

For more information about what owners, co-owners, and participants can do with Apple Card, see the Apple Support article [Set up Apple Card Family and add a co-owner and participants](#).

---

## Set up parental controls with Family Sharing on iPhone

With [Family Sharing](#), the organizer can set up parental controls for children in the Family Sharing group. You can use Screen Time to manage how your children use their Apple devices. You can also turn on Ask to Buy, so children must receive approval for purchases or free downloads.

Learn about types of Family Sharing members.

---

### Customize parental controls during setup

When you [add a child](#) to your Family Sharing group or [set up a device for a child](#), you can customize parental controls from the start. You can change those settings at any time.

Follow the onscreen instructions during setup to add any of the following:

- Age-related restrictions for content in apps, books, TV shows, and movies
- Downtime and limits for specific apps
- Restrictions for who your child can communicate with
- Approvals for purchases or free downloads

See the Apple Support article [Use parental controls on your child's iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch](#).

---

## Receive warnings about sensitive content


Screen Time can check whether you or other family members have received or sent any sexually explicit photos or videos. See [Check for sensitive images in Messages, AirDrop, and Contact Posters](#).

You can also block sensitive content and set restrictions on purchases. See [Block inappropriate content on a family member's device](#).

---



## Set up Screen Time for a child later

Screen Time allows you to manage settings for downtime, app use, contacts, content ratings, and more. To use Screen Time, your child must be using an eligible device. See the Screen Time section in the Apple Support article [System Requirements for iCloud](#).

1. Go to Settings  > Family > [*child's name*] > Screen Time.
2. Tap the child for whom you want to set up Screen Time.
3. Tap Screen Time, then follow the onscreen instructions.

For information about Screen Time settings, see [Set up Screen Time for a family member on iPhone](#).


To learn more about the different content & privacy restrictions, see the Apple Support article [Use parental controls on your child's iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch](#).

If your child requests more screen time, you can approve or decline the request in Settings  > Screen Time or in Messages .

---

## Turn on Ask to Buy for a child later

When you set up Ask to Buy, a child's purchases must be approved by the family organizer or a parent or guardian in the family group.

1. Go to Settings  > Family.
2. Tap the child for whom you want to set up Ask to Buy.
3. Tap Ask To Buy, then follow the onscreen instructions.

See the Apple Support article [Approve what kids buy with Ask to Buy](#).

*Note:* Age restrictions for Ask to Buy vary by region. In the United States, the family organizer can turn on Ask to Buy for any family member under age 18; for children under age 13, it's on by default.

---

You can also set up an Apple Cash Family account for a child. See [Use Apple Cash and Apple Card with Family Sharing on iPhone \(U.S. only\)](#).

## Set up a device for a child with Family Sharing on iPhone

With Family Sharing, the organizer, a parent, or a guardian can use Quick Start on their iPhone to set up a new iPhone or iPad for a child and customize parental controls. You can also set up an iPhone or iPad for a child without using Quick Start.

*Note:* If the child already has an Apple ID, make sure they've been added to your [Family Sharing group](#). If they don't have an Apple ID, you can create one for them while adding them to the group.

---

### Use Quick Start to set up an iPhone or iPad for a child

*Note:* Requires iOS 16 or later. Bluetooth must be turned on.

1. Sign in to your iPhone with your Apple ID.
  2. On the new iPhone or iPad you want to set up for your child, press and hold the side button or top button until the Apple logo appears.
  3. Bring your iPhone next to the new device.
  4. When you see Set Up New [device] on your iPhone, tap Continue, follow the onscreen instructions, then do one of the following:
    - If you have a child in your family group, tap your child's name.
    - If you need to create a new Apple ID for your child, tap Create New Child Account, then create an Apple ID for your child.
  5. Follow the onscreen instructions to finish setting up your child's device.
-

## Set up an iPhone or iPad for a child without using your iPhone

1. Turn on the new device.
  2. When the Quick Start screen appears, tap Set Up Without Another Device, follow the onscreen instructions, then tap Set Up for a Child in My Family.
  3. Continue to follow the onscreen instructions to complete the setup.
- 

You can set [content restrictions, communication limits, and downtime](#); set up [Screen Distance](#); [share locations](#) with all members of the Family Sharing group, including any new members added later; and turn on [Ask to Buy](#). You can change these settings at any time.


*Note:* Screen Distance is available on supported models.

# Screen Time

## Get started with Screen Time on iPhone

You can use Screen Time to get information about how you and your family members spend time on your devices—including which apps and websites you use and how often you pick up your device.

### Turn on Screen Time

Go to Settings  > Screen Time, tap App & Website Activity, then tap Turn On App & Website Activity.




Tap here to get started setting up Screen Time.



## Use Screen Time on all your devices


To share your Screen Time settings and reports across all your devices, make sure you're signed in with the same Apple ID on each device, then turn on Share Across Devices on all your devices.

1. Go to Settings  > Screen Time.
2. Scroll down, then turn on Share Across Devices.

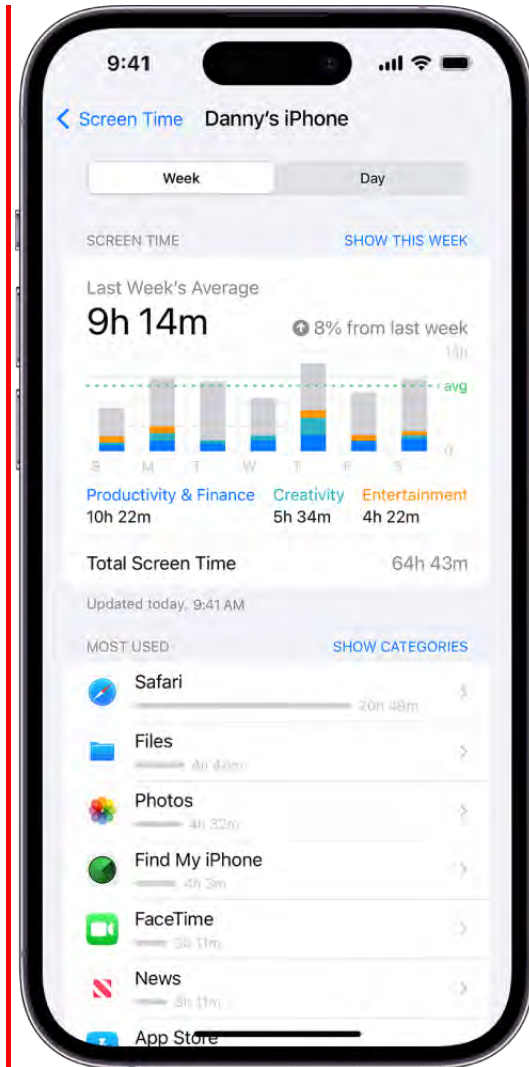
---

## View your Screen Time summary

Any time after you turn on App & Website Activity, you can view a report of your device use, including how much time you spend using certain kinds of apps, how often you pick up your iPhone and other devices, what apps send you the most notifications, and more.

1. Go to Settings  > Screen Time.
2. Tap See All App & Website Activity, then tap Devices to select which device you want to see usage for.
3. Tap Week to see a summary of your weekly use, or tap Day to see a summary of your daily use.

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL



---

## Use the Screen Time widget to check your device use at a glance

You can quickly check your device use by [adding a Screen Time widget](#) to your Home Screen. The widget displays information from your Screen Time summary—the larger the widget you add, the more information it displays.

If you [set up Screen Time for family members](#) through Family Sharing, you can tap the widget to see a list of the people in your family group. Tap the name of a family member whose report you want to view.


---

You can also view your summary by tapping a Screen Time Weekly Report notification when one appears on your screen. (If the notification disappears, you can [find it in Notification Center](#).)

# Protect your vision health with Screen Distance on iPhone

Viewing a device (or a book) too closely for an extended period of time can increase eye strain and the risk of myopia. The Screen Distance feature in Screen Time uses the TrueDepth camera (on supported models) to detect when you hold iPhone closer than 12 inches for an extended period, and encourages you to move it farther away.

*Note:* Screen Distance is turned on by default for children under 13 in a Family Sharing group.

- 
1. Go to Settings  > Screen Time.
  2. Tap Screen Distance, then turn on Screen Distance.
- 

When you hold the screen too close to your face, Screen Distance covers the screen with an alert, preventing you from continuing. When you move iPhone to a safe distance, you can tap Continue to resume using it.



## Set up Screen Time on iPhone

In Screen Time, you can schedule time away from the screen, set time limits for app use, and more.

---

### Schedule time away from the screen

You can block apps and notifications for periods when you want time away from your devices. For example, you might want to schedule downtime during meals or at bedtime.

During downtime, only calls, messages, and apps you choose to allow are available. You can receive calls from contacts you've selected to [allow communication with during downtime](#), and you can use apps you've chosen to [allow at all times](#).

1. Go to Settings  > Screen Time.

2. Tap Downtime, then do one of the following:

- Tap Turn On Downtime Until Tomorrow.
- Tap Scheduled to schedule downtime in advance.

When you schedule downtime, a 5-minute reminder is sent before downtime begins. You can ignore the reminder, or turn on downtime until the beginning of the scheduled downtime.


3. Select Every Day or Customize Days, then set the start and end times.

You can turn off the Downtime schedule at any time by turning off Scheduled.

---

### Set limits for app use

You can set a time limit for a category of apps (for example, Games or Social Networking) and for individual apps.

1. Go to Settings  > Screen Time.
2. Tap App Limits, then tap Add Limit.
3. Select one or more app categories.

To set limits for individual apps, tap the category name to see all the apps in that category, then select the apps you want to limit. If you select multiple categories or apps, the time limit you set applies to all of them.

4. Tap Next at the top right, then set the amount of time allowed.

To set an amount of time for each day, tap Customize Days, then set limits for specific days.

5. When you finish setting limits, tap Add.

To temporarily turn off all app limits, tap App Limits on the App Limits screen. To temporarily turn off a time limit for a specific category, tap the category, then turn off App Limit.





To remove a time limit for a category, tap the category, then tap Delete Limit.

---

### Choose apps and contacts to allow at all times

You can specify apps that can be used, and contacts you can communicate with, at all times—for example, in the event of an emergency—even during downtime.

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

1. Go to Settings  > Screen Time > Always Allowed.
  2. Below Allowed Apps, tap  or  next to an app to add or remove it from the Allowed Apps list.
  3. Tap  at the top left.
- 



## Set communication and safety limits and block inappropriate content on iPhone

In Screen Time, you can set limits to protect your privacy and block inappropriate content.

---

### Allow or block calls and messages from specific contacts

You can either allow or block communication—including incoming and outgoing phone calls, FaceTime calls, and messages—from certain contacts in iCloud, either at all times or during certain periods.

1. If you haven't already turned on Contacts in iCloud, go to Settings  > [your name] > iCloud, then turn on Contacts.
2. Go to Settings  > Screen Time.
3. Tap Communication Limits, tap During Screen Time, then select one of the following for communication at all times (other than during downtime):
  - *Contacts Only*: To allow communication only with your contacts.
  - *Contacts & Groups with at Least One Contact*: To allow one-on-one conversations only with people in your contacts and group conversations that include at least one person in your contacts.
  - *Everyone*: To allow conversations with anyone, including unknown numbers.
4. Tap Back at the top left, then tap During Downtime.

The option you selected in step 3 (for During Screen Time) is already set here. You can change this setting to Specific Contacts, then choose one of the following:

- *Specific Contacts*: To select contacts to allow communication with during downtime.

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

- *Everyone*: To allow conversations with anyone, including unknown numbers.

If someone who's currently blocked by your Communication Limit settings tries to call you or send you a message, their communication won't go through.


If you try to call or send a message to someone who's currently blocked by your Communication Limit settings, their name or number appears in red in your list of recent calls or messages and your communication won't go through. You can communicate with them when the communication limit is changed. If the limit applies only to downtime, you receive a Time Limit message. You can resume communication with them when downtime is over.

To resume communication with contacts who are blocked by your Communication Limit settings, change the settings by following the steps above.

---

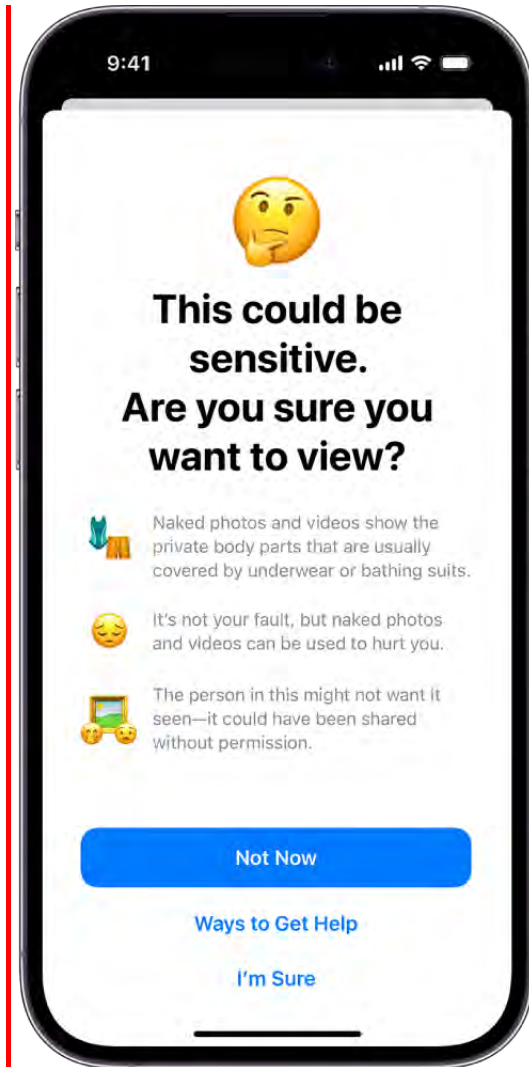
### Check for sensitive images in Messages, AirDrop, and Contact Posters

You can have your iPhone (or your family member's iPhone) detect sensitive images before they're sent or received. Turn on Communication Safety to have your device check for sensitive photos in Messages, AirDrop, and [Contact Posters](#), FaceTime messages, the Photos app, and third-party apps that adopt our Communication Safety framework. If nudity is detected in an image, the image is blurred.

1. Go to Settings  > Screen Time.
2. Tap Communication Safety, then turn on Check for Sensitive Photos.

When Check for Sensitive Photos is turned on, Messages can detect nude images before they're viewed or sent on your family member's device, and displays a warning.

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL



*Note:* When you turn on Check for Sensitive Photos in Communication Safety, it turns on Sensitive Content Warning in Settings > Privacy & Security. You can also turn on Sensitive Content Warning separately in Settings > Privacy & Security. See [Receive warnings about sensitive content on iPhone](#).

---

## Block inappropriate content

Set Content & Privacy Restrictions to have Screen Time block inappropriate content and set restrictions for iTunes Store and App Store purchases.

1. Tap Content & Privacy Restrictions, then turn on Content & Privacy Restrictions.

You can also set a passcode that's required before changing settings.

2. Select options to set content allowances for iTunes Store and App Store purchases, app use, content ratings, and more.

You can also choose to allow changes to your privacy settings through Screen Time.



DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

*Note:* To restrict [SharePlay in FaceTime calls](#) on your device, go to Settings > Screen Time > Content & Privacy Restrictions > Allowed Apps, then turn off SharePlay. To allow SharePlay, turn it on.

---

## Set up Screen Time for a family member on iPhone


With Screen Time, you can keep track of how family members are using their devices so you can help them structure the time they spend on them. You can set up Screen Time for a family member on their device or, if you've set up Family Sharing, you can set up Screen Time for a family member through Family Sharing on your device. See [Set up parental controls with Family Sharing on iPhone](#) and the Apple Support article [Family Sharing and Apple ID for your child](#).

As the organizer of a Family Sharing group, when you set up a child account, you can set up content restrictions, Communication Limits, and downtime. After the child's account is set up, you can change parental control settings at any time in Settings > Screen Time. See [Set up a device for a child with Family Sharing on iPhone](#).

*Note:* For children under 13, [Communication Safety](#) and [Screen Distance](#) are turned on by default, and the Web Content Filter blocks adult content.

---

## Set up Screen Time for a family member

1. On your device, go to Settings  > Screen Time.
2. Scroll down and select a family member below Family.
3. To schedule downtime for your family member, follow the instructions in [Schedule time away from the screen](#).

If your child requests more screen time, you can approve or decline the request in Settings > Screen Time or in Messages.

4. To set limits for app use for your family member, follow the instructions in [Set limits for app use](#).
5. To choose apps and contacts to allow your family member to use at all times, follow the instructions in [Choose apps and contacts to allow at all times](#).


*Note:* If your family member needs health or accessibility apps, make sure they're in the Allowed Apps list. If Messages isn't always allowed, your family member may not be able to send or receive messages (including to emergency numbers and contacts) during downtime or after the app limit has expired.

6. To help reduce your family member's risk of myopia or eye strain, [turn on Screen Distance](#).


---

## Allow or block communication on a family member's device

You can block incoming and outgoing communication on your family member's device—including phone calls, FaceTime calls, and messages—from specific contacts, either at all times or during certain periods.

1. If you haven't already turned on Contacts in iCloud on your family member's device, go to Settings  > [child's name] > iCloud, then turn on Contacts.

*Note:* You can only manage your family member's communication if they're using Contacts in iCloud.

2. On your family member's device, go to Settings  > Screen Time.
3. Tap Communication Limits, then do any of the following:
  - *Limit communication at any time:* Tap During Screen Time, then select Contacts Only, Contacts & Groups with at Least One Contact, or Everyone.

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

- *Limit communication during downtime:* Tap During Downtime. The option you selected for During Screen Time is already set here. You can change this setting to Specific Contacts.

If you select Specific Contacts, tap either Choose From My Contacts, Choose From [child's name] Contacts, or Add New Contact to select people you want to allow your family member to communicate with during downtime.

- *Manage a child's contacts:* If you're using Family Sharing, you can view, edit, add, or delete your child's contacts. Tap Manage [child's name] Contacts.

If your child already has contacts in iCloud, they receive a notification on their device asking them to approve the request to manage them. If they don't have contacts, they don't get a notification and you can immediately add contacts.

When you manage your child's contacts, a new row appears beneath Manage [child's name] Contacts to show how many contacts your child has. Tap the row to view and edit the contacts.

- *Allow contact editing:* Tap Allow Contact Editing to turn off this option and prevent your child from editing their contacts.

Turning off contact editing and limiting communication at any time to Contacts Only is a good way to control who your child can communicate with and when they can be contacted.

If someone who's currently blocked by the Communication Limit settings tries to call your family member (by phone or FaceTime), or send them a message, their communication won't go through.

If your family member tries to call or send a message to someone who's currently blocked by the Communication Limit settings, the recipient's name or number appears in red with an hourglass icon, and the communication won't go through. If the limit applies only to downtime, your family member receives a Time Limit message and can resume communication with the contact when downtime is over.

To allow your family member to communicate with contacts who are blocked by the Communication Limit settings, change the settings by following the steps above.


---

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL


## Check for sensitive images in Messages and AirDrop on a family member's iPhone

You can have your iPhone (or your family member's iPhone) check for sensitive images in the Messages app or AirDrop before they're sent or received. If nudity is detected in an image, the image is blurred and resources are provided to help your child handle the situation (not available in all countries or regions). This feature does not give Apple access to the photos. See the Apple Support article [About communication safety in Messages](#).

*Note:* For children under 13, Check for Sensitive Photos in Communication Safety is turned on by default

1. On your device, go to Settings  > Screen Time.
2. Scroll down and tap the name of your family member.
3. Tap Communication Safety, then turn on Check for Sensitive Photos.


You may need to enter the Screen Time passcode.

*Note:* When you turn on Check for Sensitive Photos, it turns on the Sensitive Content Warning in Settings  > Privacy & Security. See [Receive warnings about sensitive content on iPhone](#).

---

## Block inappropriate content on a family member's device

You can help ensure that the content on your family member's device is age appropriate by limiting the explicitness ratings in Content & Privacy Restrictions.

1. On your family member's device, go to Settings  > Screen Time.
2. Tap Content & Privacy Restrictions, then turn on Content & Privacy Restrictions.
3. Choose specific content and privacy options.

*Note:* To protect your family member's hearing, scroll down, tap Reduce Loud Sounds, then select Don't Allow. (This prevents changes to the maximum headphone volume.) See [Check your headphone audio levels on iPhone](#).

To restrict [SharePlay in FaceTime calls](#) for your family member, go to Settings > Screen Time > Content & Privacy Restrictions > Allowed Apps, then turn off SharePlay. To allow SharePlay, turn it on.

4. Tap  at the top left.

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

## Add or change Screen Time settings for a family member later

To add or change Screen Time settings for a family member later, follow the steps described in the sections above.

---

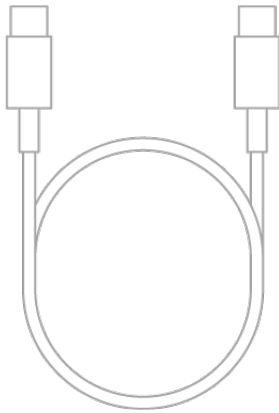
**Important:** If you set up Screen Time for a family member on their device (not through Family Sharing), and you forget the Screen Time passcode, you can use your Apple ID to reset it. However, if you set up Screen Time for a family member on your device through Family Sharing and you forget your Screen Time passcode, you can reset it on your device using your device passcode, Touch ID, or Face ID.

# Accessories

## Charging cable for iPhone

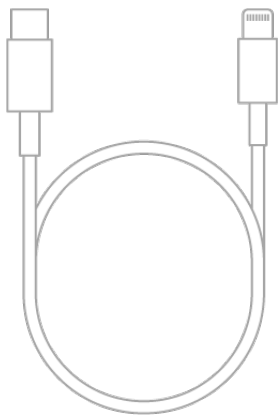
Your iPhone includes one of the following charging cables:

### USB-C Cable



You can connect iPhone to a power outlet [using a compatible power adapter](#) (sold separately) and the included cable. You can also [connect the included cable](#) to your computer's USB-C port for charging, transferring files, and more.

### USB-C to Lightning Cable



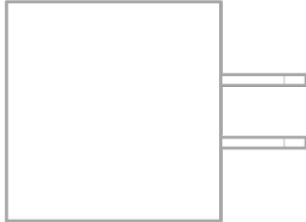
You can connect iPhone to a power outlet [using a compatible power adapter](#) (sold separately) and the included cable. You can also [connect the included cable](#) to your computer's USB-C port for charging, transferring files, and more.

## Power adapters for iPhone

You can connect iPhone to a power outlet [using its charging cable](#) (included) and a compatible power adapter (sold separately).

You can use the following Apple USB power adapters to charge iPhone. The size and style may vary depending on the country or region.

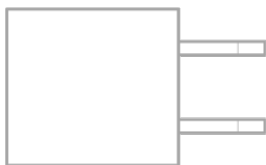
### Apple 20W USB-C power adapter



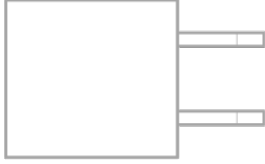
*Note:* For fast charging, iPhone 12, iPhone SE (3rd generation), and later models require a power adapter with a minimum power output of 20 watts, such as the Apple 20W USB power adapter. If you use a third-party power adapter, it should meet these recommended specifications:

- *Frequency:* 50 to 60 Hz, single phase
- *Line Voltage:* 100 to 240 VAC
- *Output Voltage/Current:* 9 VDC/2.2 A
- *Minimum Power Output:* 20 W
- *Output Port:* USB-C

### Apple 18W USB-C power adapter



## Apple 5W USB power adapter



You can also use Apple USB power adapters for iPad and Mac notebooks to charge iPhone, and you can use third-party power adapters that are compliant with applicable country regulations and international and regional safety standards.

## MagSafe chargers and battery packs for iPhone

On supported models, MagSafe chargers and battery packs snap to the back of iPhone or its MagSafe case or sleeve. The magnets ensure proper alignment for fast wireless charging, and you can hold and use iPhone while it's charging.

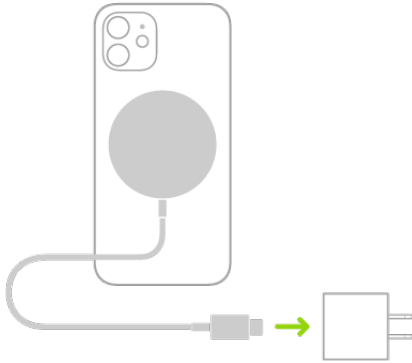
Without the magnetic alignment, MagSafe chargers can also charge other iPhone models and AirPods. (AirPods and MagSafe chargers, battery packs, cases, and sleeves are sold separately.)



---

## Charge iPhone or AirPods with MagSafe Charger


1. Connect MagSafe Charger to power using the [Apple 20W USB-C power adapter](#) or another compatible power adapter (sold separately).



2. Do one of the following:

- *iPhone:* (supported models) Place MagSafe Charger on the back of iPhone or its MagSafe case or sleeve. The charging symbol appears when iPhone starts charging.

*Note:* If iPhone Leather Wallet is attached, remove it before placing MagSafe Charger on the back of iPhone.

- *Other iPhone models:* Place iPhone face up on the center of MagSafe Charger. When iPhone is aligned properly with the charger,  appears in the status bar.
- *AirPods (2nd generation) with Wireless Charging Case, AirPods (3rd generation), and AirPods Pro:* Place your AirPods in the charging case, close the lid, then place the case with the status light facing up on the center of MagSafe Charger. When the case is aligned properly with the charger, the status light turns on for several seconds, then turns off while continuing to charge.

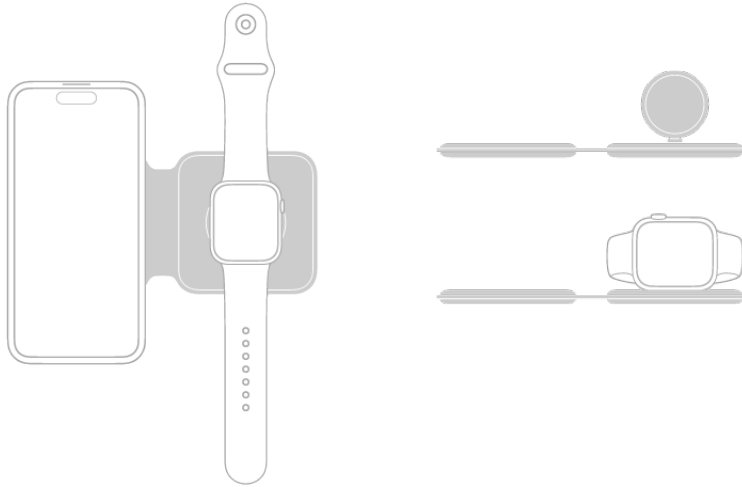
See the Apple Support article [How to use your MagSafe Charger](#).

---

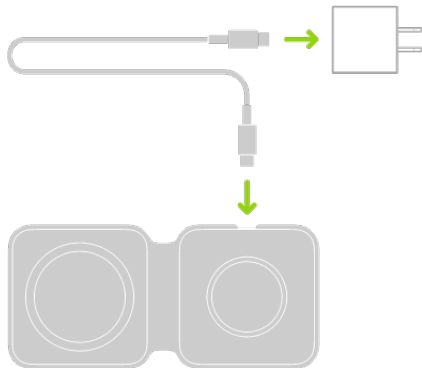
## Charge iPhone or AirPods and Apple Watch with MagSafe Duo Charger

With MagSafe Duo Charger, you can charge your iPhone or AirPods at the same time you charge your Apple Watch. (MagSafe Duo Charger, Apple Watch, and AirPods are sold separately.)

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL



1. Connect MagSafe Duo Charger to power using the [Apple 20W USB-C power adapter](#) or another compatible power adapter (sold separately).



2. To charge iPhone or AirPods, do one of the following:
  - *iPhone*: Place iPhone face up on the center of the iPhone charging surface. Supported models help you align iPhone with the charger, and the charging symbol appears when iPhone starts charging. On other models, the battery charging indicator appears when you properly align iPhone with the charging surface. Unless your iPhone is in silent mode, you hear a chime when charging begins.  
  
*Note:* If iPhone Leather Wallet is attached, remove it before placing iPhone on MagSafe Duo Charger.
  - *AirPods (2nd generation) with Wireless Charging Case, AirPods (3rd generation), and AirPods Pro*: Place your AirPods in the charging case, close the lid, then place the case with the status light facing up on the center of the iPhone charging surface. When the case is aligned properly with the charger, the status light turns on for several seconds, then turns off while continuing to charge.

3. To charge Apple Watch, do one of the following:

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

- With the Apple Watch charging surface lying flat and the Apple Watch band open, place Apple Watch face up on the charging surface.
- With the Apple Watch charging surface raised, place Apple Watch on its side with its back against the charging surface. Apple Watch automatically goes into Nightstand mode, so you can also use it as an alarm clock.

The concave charging surface magnetically snaps to the back of your Apple Watch and aligns it properly. When charging begins, a charging symbol appears on the watch face.

---

## Charge iPhone with MagSafe Battery Pack

MagSafe Battery Pack magnetically attaches to supported models and extends the battery life.

*Note:* If iPhone Leather Wallet is attached, remove it before placing MagSafe Battery Pack.

- *Charge your iPhone on the go:* Place MagSafe Battery Pack on the back of iPhone or its MagSafe case or sleeve. The charging symbol appears when iPhone starts charging.
- *See the battery status of MagSafe Battery Pack and iPhone:* Check the Batteries widget in Today View or on the Home Screen. See [Add a Batteries widget to your Lock Screen or Home Screen](#).
- *Charge MagSafe Battery Pack and iPhone:* With MagSafe Battery Pack on iPhone, connect either device to power using the [USB-C to Lightning Cable](#) or [USB-C Cable](#) and the [Apple 20W USB-C power adapter](#) or another compatible power adapter (minimum power output of 20 watts; sold separately). The status indicator on MagSafe Battery Pack is amber while charging, then turns green when charging is complete.

*Note:* By default, charging is limited to 90 percent to optimize the lifespan of MagSafe Battery Pack. To remove the charging limit, open Control Center, tap Low Power Mode, then tap Charge past 90%.

You can also charge MagSafe Battery Pack without iPhone.

See the Apple Support article [How to use your MagSafe Battery Pack](#).

---

# MagSafe cases and sleeves for iPhone

MagSafe cases and sleeves contain magnets that align iPhone (supported models) with MagSafe chargers and battery packs. You can even hold and use iPhone while it's charging. See [MagSafe chargers and battery packs for iPhone](#).

## iPhone Leather Sleeve

When iPhone Leather Sleeve covers your iPhone, you can do the following without removing the sleeve:

- *Get the current time:* If the clock window is dark, raise iPhone or tap the window.
- *See the charging status:* When you charge iPhone, the clock window indicates the battery level and its charging status.
- *See who's calling:* When a phone or FaceTime call arrives, the caller's name or number appears in the clock window.

To answer, remove iPhone from the sleeve, then drag the slider.


Or without removing iPhone, use your AirPods or Apple Watch (sold separately) to answer the call. (FaceTime video calls are answered with your video paused.)

- *Make an Express Transit payment:* Position the rear top of iPhone within a few centimeters of the contactless reader at the transit gate. A confirmation message appears in the clock window. See [Pay for your ride with Express Transit](#).

If your iPhone is in Express Cards power reserve mode, confirmation messages don't appear in the clock window.

If you carry a separate transit card in iPhone Leather Sleeve, your transit card is used for payment when you position the lower front of iPhone near the contactless reader.

When your iPhone is in iPhone Leather Sleeve, you can also use "Hey Siri," your AirPods, your Apple Watch, and CarPlay to make calls, ask questions, and do tasks that don't require you to look at or touch the iPhone screen.


*Note:* If you remove your iPhone from the sleeve and see the time for the clock window instead of the Lock Screen, tap  in the top-right corner.

# Qi-certified wireless chargers for iPhone

You can wirelessly charge iPhone using a Qi-certified charger (sold separately). You can also use a Qi-certified charger to charge AirPods.

---

## Charge iPhone or AirPods with a Qi-certified charger

1. Connect the charger to power. Use the power adapter that came with your charger or a power adapter recommended by the manufacturer.
2. Do one of the following:
  - *iPhone*: Place iPhone face up on the center of the charger. When iPhone is aligned properly with the charger,  appears in the status bar.
  - *AirPods (2nd generation) with Wireless Charging Case, AirPods (3rd generation), and AirPods Pro*: Place your AirPods in the charging case, close the lid, then place the case with the status light facing up on the center of the charger. When the case is aligned properly with the charger, the status light turns on for several seconds, then turns off while continuing to charge.

See the Apple Support articles [How to wirelessly charge your iPhone](#) and [Charge your AirPods and learn about battery life](#).

---

---


# AirPods and EarPods

## Use AirPods with iPhone

After you pair AirPods with iPhone, you can use AirPods to listen to audio playing on iPhone, make and answer calls, listen and respond to messages, hear reminders when you need them, listen to conversations more easily in noisy environments, and more.

---

### Pair AirPods with your iPhone

1. On iPhone, go to Settings  > Bluetooth, then turn on Bluetooth.
2. Go to the Home Screen on your iPhone.
3. Do one of the following:
  - *AirPods (1st, 2nd, and 3rd generation) and AirPods Pro*: Open the case with your AirPods inside, then hold it next to your iPhone.
  - *AirPods Max*: Take your AirPods Max out of the Smart Case, then hold AirPods Max next to your iPhone.
4. Follow the onscreen instructions, then tap Done.

*Note:* If onscreen instructions for pairing your AirPods Max don't appear, go to Settings > Bluetooth, then select your AirPods Max. If the status light doesn't flash white on AirPods Max, press and hold the noise control button until it does.

Your AirPods are automatically paired with all of your supported devices where you're signed in with the same Apple ID (iOS 10, iPadOS 13, macOS 10.12, watchOS 3, or later required).

*Note:* If you can't pair your AirPods, see the Apple Support article [If your AirPods won't connect](#).

---

### Do more with AirPods and your iPhone

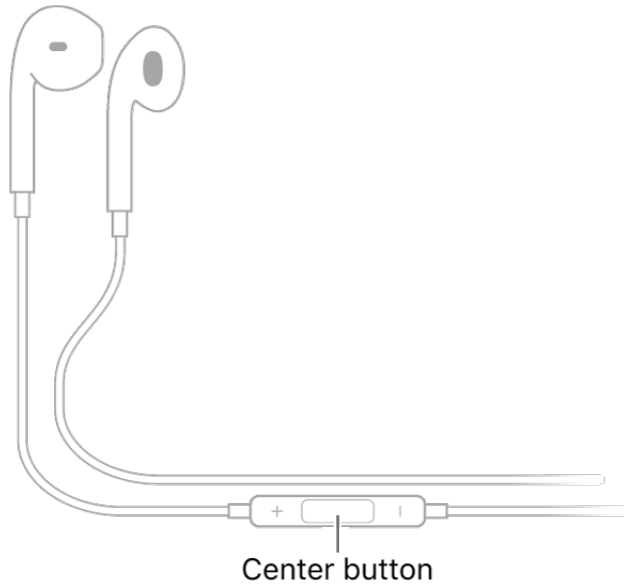
See the [AirPods User Guide](#) for detailed instructions on how to get the most out of your AirPods.

---

## Use EarPods with iPhone

You can use EarPods (sold separately) to listen to music and videos and to make calls on iPhone. EarPods feature a microphone, volume buttons, and the center button.

Use the center button to answer and end calls, control audio and video playback, and use Siri, even when iPhone is locked.



---

### Control audio with your EarPods

- *Pause:* Press the center button. Press again to resume playback.
- *Skip forward:* Press the center button twice quickly.
- *Skip backward:* Press the center button three times quickly.
- *Fast-forward:* Press the center button twice quickly and hold.

---

### Manage calls using your EarPods

- *Answer an incoming call:* Press the center button.
  - *End the current call:* Press the center button.
  - *Switch to an incoming or on-hold call, and put the current call on hold:* Press the center button. Press again to switch back to the first call.
-

## Ask Siri with your EarPods

Press and hold the center button until you hear a beep. Let go, then ask Siri to perform a task or answer your question. See [Use Siri on iPhone](#).

---

# Use Apple Watch with iPhone

---

## Pair Apple Watch with iPhone

On your iPhone, tap the Apple Watch app , then follow the onscreen instructions.

See [Set up and pair your Apple Watch with iPhone](#) in the Apple Watch User Guide. (Apple Watch sold separately.)


---

## Unlock iPhone with Apple Watch

When you're wearing your Apple Watch (Series 3 and later), you can use it to securely unlock your iPhone (models with Face ID) when you're wearing a face mask (watchOS 7.4 or later required).

**Note:** On iPhone 12 models, iPhone 13 models, iPhone 14 models, and iPhone XY models, it's not necessary to use Apple Watch to unlock iPhone when you're wearing a face mask. See [Set up Face ID on iPhone](#).

To allow Apple Watch to unlock your iPhone, do the following:

1. Go to Settings  > Face ID & Passcode.
2. Scroll down, then turn on Apple Watch (below Unlock with Apple Watch).

If you have more than one watch, turn on the setting for each one.

To unlock your iPhone while you're wearing your Apple Watch and a face mask, raise iPhone or tap its screen to wake it, then glance at your iPhone.

**Note:** To unlock your iPhone, your Apple Watch must have a passcode, be unlocked and on your wrist, and be close to your iPhone.

---



## Work out with Apple Fitness+

Used in conjunction with Apple Watch, Apple Fitness+ is a subscription service that lets you choose from a catalog of workouts led by expert trainers. While you follow a workout on your iPhone, in-session metrics like heart rate and calories burned (which are captured by your watch) appear on your screen. (watchOS 7.2 or later required; Apple Fitness+ availability varies by country or region.) See [All about Apple Fitness+](#) in the Apple Watch User Guide.

*Note:* With Fitness on iPhone, you can view your active calories and steps, set a move goal, track your progress, and see your movement trends over time—even if you don't have an Apple Watch. See [Track your daily activity and change your move goal in Fitness on iPhone](#).

---

## Collect health and fitness data from Apple Watch

Apple Watch can send data about your health and fitness to iPhone for you to [view in Health](#). Apple Watch can also send notifications about high heart rates, low heart rates, loud environmental sounds, and more to your iPhone.

See [Track important health information](#) in the Apple Watch User Guide.

---

---



# Apple TV, smart TVs, and video displays

## Wirelessly stream videos and photos to Apple TV or a smart TV from iPhone

You can use your Apple TV or an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV to watch videos and view photos streamed from your iPhone.

---

### Play video on Apple TV or an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV

1. While playing video in the Apple TV app  or another supported video app on your iPhone, tap the screen to show the controls.
2. Tap , then choose your Apple TV or AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV as the playback destination.

If an AirPlay passcode appears on the TV screen, enter the passcode on your iPhone.




To change the playback destination, choose a different AirPlay option on your iPhone screen.

**COMMENT:** #ba #tv-movies


**COMMENT:** Screenshot to come: An Apple TV screen showing the AirPlay button.

---

### Show photos on Apple TV or an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV

1. In Photos  on your iPhone, tap a photo, then tap .
2. Swipe up, tap , then choose your Apple TV or an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV as the playback destination.

If an AirPlay passcode appears on the TV screen, enter the passcode on your iPhone.

To stop streaming photos, tap  near the top of the iPhone screen, then tap Turn off AirPlay.

---

### Turn automatic AirPlay streaming on or off


You can allow your iPhone to discover and automatically connect to any frequently used Apple TV or smart TV when playing content from apps that you regularly use with AirPlay.

Go to Settings  > General > AirPlay & Handoff, then choose Automatic, Never, or Ask.

---

## Mirror your iPhone on Apple TV or a smart TV

On Apple TV or a smart TV, you can show whatever appears on your iPhone.

1. Open Control Center on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then choose your Apple TV or an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV as the playback destination.

If an AirPlay passcode appears on the TV screen, enter the passcode on your iPhone.

To switch back to iPhone, open Control Center, tap , then tap Stop Mirroring.

---

*Note:* For a list of AirPlay 2-enabled smart TVs, see the [Home accessories website](#).

To learn more about using Apple TV, see the [Apple TV User Guide](#).

## Connect iPhone to a display with a cable

With the appropriate cable or adapter, you can connect your iPhone to a secondary display, like a computer monitor, TV, or projector.

---

1. Depending on your iPhone model, plug a Lightning Digital AV Adapter, Lightning to VGA Adapter, USB-C Display AV Adapter, or USB-C VGA Multi-port Adapter into the charging port on the bottom of iPhone.
  2. Connect an HDMI or VGA cable to the adapter.
  3. Connect the other end of the HDMI or VGA cable to the monitor, TV, or projector.
  4. If necessary, switch to the correct video source on the monitor, TV, or projector. If you need help, use the display's manual.
- 




The adapters have an extra port so you can connect the charging cable and charge your iPhone while connected to a monitor, TV, or projector.

# Play audio from iPhone on HomePod and other wireless speakers

You can play audio from iPhone on wireless devices like HomePod, Apple TV, AirPlay 2-enabled smart TVs, and Bluetooth® headphones and speakers.

---


## Play audio from iPhone on a wireless device

1. On your iPhone, open an audio app, such as Podcasts  or Music , then choose an item to play.
2. Tap , then choose a playback destination.

**COMMENT:** #ba #podcasts

**COMMENT:** Screenshot to come: A Podcast oor Music screen showing the Playback button.

*Note:* If your AirPlay 2-enabled devices don't appear in the list of playback destinations, make sure they're on the same Wi-Fi network. With a Bluetooth device, the playback destination returns to iPhone if you move the device out of Bluetooth range.

To select the playback destination, you can also tap  on the Lock Screen or in Control Center.

*Note:* For information about setting up a Bluetooth audio device, see [Pair a Bluetooth headphone, car kit, game controller, or other device](#).

---

## Play audio on multiple AirPlay 2-enabled devices

With AirPlay 2 and iPhone, you can play audio on multiple AirPlay 2-enabled devices connected to the same Wi-Fi network. For example, you can play a party playlist on HomePod speakers in the living room and kitchen, on an Apple TV in the bedroom, and on an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV in the den.


**Siri:** Say something like:

- "Stop playing music everywhere"
- "Set the dining room volume to 10 percent"
- "What's playing in the kitchen?"

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

- “Play a song I like in the kitchen”
- “Add the living room speaker”
- “Remove the music from the kitchen”
- “Move the music to the den”

You can also choose playback destinations from the iPhone screen.

1. Tap  in Control Center, on the Lock Screen, or on the Now Playing screen for the app you’re listening to.
2. Select each device you want to use.


*Note:* Devices arranged in a stereo pair are treated as a single audio device.

---

### Hand off audio from iPhone to HomePod

While playing audio from Music, Podcasts, or another audio app, bring iPhone close to the top of HomePod.

Audio hand off has the following requirements:

- You must be signed in with the same Apple ID on both devices.
- On your iPhone, you’ve turned on Wi-Fi and Handoff.
- iPhone and HomePod must be in the same HomeKit home and on the same Wi-Fi network.
- Your devices must have Bluetooth turned on in Settings  and be within Bluetooth range of one another (about 33 feet or 10 meters).

To disable Handoff between iPhone and HomePod and other devices, go to Settings > General > AirPlay & Handoff.

---

*Note:* To learn more about using HomePod speakers and Apple TV, see the [HomePod User Guide](#) and [Apple TV User Guide](#).

For a list of AirPlay 2-enabled smart TVs, see the [Home accessories website](#).

---


# Magic Keyboard

## Pair Magic Keyboard with iPhone


You can use Magic Keyboard, including Magic Keyboard with Numeric Keypad, to enter text on iPhone. Magic Keyboard connects to iPhone using Bluetooth®.

---

### Pair Magic Keyboard

1. Make sure the keyboard is turned on and charged.
2. On iPhone, go to Settings  > Bluetooth, then turn on Bluetooth.
3. Select the device when it appears in the Other Devices list.

*Note:* If Magic Keyboard is already paired with another device, you must unpair them before you can connect Magic Keyboard to your iPhone. Do one of the following:

- *On iPhone or iPad:* See [Unpair a Bluetooth device](#).
- *On macOS 13 or later:* Choose Apple menu  > System Settings, click Bluetooth in the sidebar, Control-click the device, then choose Forget.
- *On macOS 12.5 or earlier:* Choose Apple menu > System Preferences, click Bluetooth, Control-click the device name, then click Remove.

---

### Reconnect Magic Keyboard to iPhone

Magic Keyboard disconnects when you turn its switch to Off or when you move it or iPhone out of Bluetooth range—about 33 feet (10 meters).

To reconnect, turn the keyboard switch to On, or bring the keyboard and iPhone back into range, then tap any key.

---

## Enter characters with diacritical marks while using Magic Keyboard with iPhone

If your Magic Keyboard doesn't include accents and other diacritical marks for the language you're typing, you can use an Option key modifier or the onscreen keyboard to enter those marks.

---


## Use the Option key to enter a diacritical mark for a character

To enter a character with a diacritical mark, you can press the Option key on Magic Keyboard to select a mark.

1. Do one of the following:

- [Add or remove a keyboard for another language](#) that supports diacritical marks, then in an app, [switch to that language keyboard](#).

For example, add the Spanish (Mexico) keyboard, then in an app, press and hold the Control key on Magic Keyboard, then press the Space bar until you select Español (México).

- Go to Settings  > General > Keyboard > Hardware Keyboard, then [choose an alternative keyboard layout](#) that supports diacritical marks.

For example, if you have the English (US) language keyboard, tap English (US), then choose U.S. International — PC or ABC — Extended.

2. In an app, press and hold the Option key, then press a key that enters a diacritical mark.

For example, the Spanish (Mexico) keyboard and the U.S. International — PC alternative layout support these diacritical marks:

- *Acute accent* (for example, é): Option-E.
- *Grave accent* (for example, è): Option-`.
- *Tilde* (for example, ñ): Option-N.
- *Diaeresis or umlaut* (for example, ü): Option-U.
- *Circumflex* (for example, ê): Option-I.



3. Press the letter.

For example, to enter ñ using the Spanish (Mexico) keyboard or the U.S. International — PC alternative layout, press Option-N, then type an *n*.

*Note:* The ABC - Extended alternative layout also allows you to enter tone marks for typing Mandarin Chinese in Pinyin orthography. For example, to type ǔ in lǔxíng ("travel"), press Option-V, then type a *v*. In addition, the ABC - Extended layout allows you to type diacritical marks and letters from several different European languages, such as Czech, French, German, Hungarian, and Polish.

---

## Use the onscreen keyboard to enter a diacritical mark

1. To show the onscreen keyboard, press  on Magic Keyboard.
  2. On the onscreen keyboard, touch and hold the letter, number, or symbol on the keyboard that's related to the character you want.  
  
For example, to enter é, touch and hold the e key.
  3. Slide your finger to choose a variant.
  4. To hide the onscreen keyboard when you're finished, press  on Magic Keyboard.
- 

## Switch between keyboards with Magic Keyboard and iPhone

With Magic Keyboard, you can switch between the language keyboard for your region, an emoji keyboard, other language keyboards that you add, and the onscreen keyboard.

---

### Switch between language keyboards and the onscreen emoji keyboard

1. On Magic Keyboard, press and hold the Control key.
  2. Press the Space bar to cycle between the language keyboard for your region, the emoji keyboard, and [any keyboards you added](#) for typing in different languages.
- 

### Show or hide the onscreen keyboard

To show the onscreen keyboard, press  on Magic Keyboard. To hide the onscreen keyboard, press  again.


---

## Dictate text while using Magic Keyboard with iPhone

You can dictate text instead of typing it on Magic Keyboard.

*Note:* Dictation may not be available in all languages or in all countries or regions, and features may vary. Cellular data charges may apply.

---

1. Go to Settings  > General > Keyboard, turn on Enable Dictation, then choose a dictation shortcut.



DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

2. To insert text by dictating, tap to place the insertion point, then press the dictation shortcut key twice.
  3. To use Magic Keyboard again, quickly press the dictation shortcut key twice.
- 


As you speak to insert text, iPhone automatically inserts punctuation for you. You can insert emoji by saying their names (for example, "mind blown emoji" or "happy emoji").

## Use shortcuts on Magic Keyboard with iPhone

You can perform searches and use text replacements from anywhere on iPhone without taking your hands away from Magic Keyboard.

---

- *Open Search:* Press Command-Space.

*Note:* You can change the actions that are performed by the Command key (and other modifier keys like Caps Lock). Go to Settings  > General > Keyboard > Hardware Keyboard, tap Modifier Keys, tap a key, then choose the action you want it to perform.

- *Use text replacements:* You can set up text replacements that enter words or phrases after you type just a few characters. For example, type "omw" to enter "On my way!" See [Save keystrokes with text replacements on iPhone](#).
  - *Choose additional accessibility keyboard shortcuts:* Go to Settings > Accessibility > Keyboards > Full Keyboard Access, then turn on Full Keyboard Access. See [Control iPhone with an external keyboard](#).
- 

## Choose an alternative layout for Magic Keyboard with iPhone

With an alternative keyboard layout, you can enter letters and marks that are different from the ones on Magic Keyboard. For example, with the ABC - Extended keyboard layout, you can type letters and [enter diacritical marks](#) for several different European languages and tone marks for Mandarin Chinese in Pinyin.


---

1. Go to Settings  > General > Keyboard > Hardware Keyboard.

2. Tap a language at the top of the screen, then choose an alternative layout from the list.
- 


## Change typing assistance options for Magic Keyboard with iPhone

You can change Magic Keyboard options for autocorrection, autocapitalization, and more.

Go to Settings  > General > Keyboard > Hardware Keyboard, then do any of the following:

- *Turn Auto-Capitalization on or off:* When this option is selected, an app supporting this feature capitalizes proper nouns and the first words in sentences as you type.
- *Turn Auto-Correction on or off:* When this option is selected, an app supporting this feature corrects the spelling as you type.
- *Turn "." Shortcut on or off:* When this option is selected, double-tapping the space bar inserts a period followed by a space.
- *Change the action performed by the Command key or other modifier key:* Tap Modifier Keys, tap a key, then choose the action you want it to perform.

## Connect external storage devices to iPhone

You can use the Files app  and other supported apps to access files stored on external devices, such as USB drives and SD cards, connected to your iPhone.

---

## Connect a USB drive or an SD card reader

1. Attach the USB drive or SD card reader to the charging port on your iPhone using a compatible connector or adapter.

You may need the Lightning to USB Camera Adapter, Lightning to USB 3 Camera Adapter, USB-C to SD Card Camera Reader, or Lightning to SD Card Camera Reader (all sold separately).

*Note:* An external storage device must have only a single data partition, and it must be formatted as APFS, APFS (encrypted), macOS Extended (HFS+), exFAT (FAT64), FAT32, or FAT. To change the formatting of a storage device, use a Mac or PC.

2. Do any of the following:

- *Insert an SD memory card into a card reader:* Don't force the card into the slot on the reader; it fits only one way.

*Note:* You can import photos and videos from the memory card directly to the Photos app. See [Import and export photos and videos on iPhone](#).

- *View the contents of the drive or memory card:* In a supported app (for example, Files), tap Browse at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the device below Locations. If you don't see Locations, tap Browse again at the bottom of the screen.
- *Disconnect the drive or card reader:* Remove it from the charging port on iPhone.

*Note:* External hard drives often require an external power source when used with iPhone. If an external hard drive doesn't supply its own power, and your iPhone has a USB-C connector, you can use a powered USB hub. If your iPhone has a Lightning connector, you can use the Lightning to USB 3 Camera Adapter connected to a USB power adapter.

---

## Set up and use Bluetooth accessories on iPhone

Using a Bluetooth® connection, you can use third-party devices such as wireless keyboards, headphones, speakers, car kits, game controllers, and more with iPhone.


*Note:* iPhone must be within about 33 feet (10 meters) of the Bluetooth device.

---

## Pair a Bluetooth headphone, car kit, game controller, or other device

1. Follow the instructions that came with the device to put it in discovery mode.

*Note:* To pair AirPods, see the instructions for your model in the “Pair and connect” section in the [AirPods User Guide](#).


2. On iPhone, go to Settings  > Bluetooth, turn on Bluetooth, then tap the name of the device.

*Note:* With Siri Eyes Free (available in select cars), you can use your voice to control features of your iPhone without looking at or touching iPhone. Use Bluetooth to pair iPhone to your car (refer to the user guide that came with your car if you need to). To activate Siri, press and hold the voice command button on your steering wheel until you hear the Siri tone, then make a request.

---

## Customize a wireless game controller


After you pair a compatible game controller, you can customize it for supported games from Apple Arcade and the App Store.

1. Go to Settings  > General > Game Controller.
2. Tap the buttons you want to change.
3. To customize for a specific app, tap Add App.

*Note:* Apple Arcade availability varies by country or region.

---

## Play audio from iPhone on a Bluetooth audio device

1. On your iPhone, open an audio app, such as Music, then choose an item to play.
2. Tap , then choose your Bluetooth device.

While audio is playing, you can change the playback destination on the Lock Screen or in Control Center.



The playback destination returns to iPhone if you move the device out of Bluetooth range.

For information about protecting your hearing from loud volume while listening to headphones with iPhone, see [Use audiogram data in Health on iPhone](#).

**WARNING:** For important information about avoiding hearing loss and avoiding distractions that could lead to dangerous situations, see [Important safety information for iPhone](#).

## Improve the audio accuracy of third-party Bluetooth devices


You can improve the sound of third-party Bluetooth devices by specifying the Bluetooth device type (such as headphone, speaker, car stereo, and more) on your iPhone.

1. Go to Settings  > Bluetooth, then tap  next to the name of the device.
2. Tap Device Type, then choose the type of device.

---



## Bypass your Bluetooth device for calls

To use the iPhone receiver or speaker for calls, do any of the following:

- Answer a call by tapping the iPhone screen.
- During a call, tap Audio, then choose iPhone or Speaker Phone.
- Turn off the Bluetooth device, unpair it, or move out of range.
- Go to Settings , tap Bluetooth, then turn off Bluetooth.

---

## Unpair a Bluetooth device


Go to Settings  > Bluetooth, tap the information button  next to the name of the device, then tap Forget This Device.

If you don't see the Devices list, make sure Bluetooth is turned on.

If you have AirPods and you tap Forget This Device, they're automatically removed from other devices where you're signed in with the same Apple ID.

---

## Disconnect from Bluetooth devices

To quickly disconnect from all Bluetooth devices without turning Bluetooth off, open Control Center, then tap .

---

To learn about Bluetooth privacy settings on iPhone, see the Apple Support article [If an app would like to use Bluetooth on your device](#). If you have trouble connecting a Bluetooth device, see the Apple Support article [If you can't connect a Bluetooth accessory to your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch](#).

*Note:* The use of certain accessories with iPhone may affect wireless performance. Not all iOS or iPadOS accessories are fully compatible with iPhone. Turning on airplane mode may eliminate audio interference between iPhone and an accessory. Reorienting or relocating iPhone and the connected accessory may improve wireless performance.

# Print from iPhone

Use AirPrint to print wirelessly to an AirPrint-enabled printer from apps such as Mail, Photos, and Safari. Many apps available on the App Store also support AirPrint.

iPhone and the printer must be on the same Wi-Fi network. See the Apple Support article [About AirPrint](#).

---

## See the status of a print job





Open the App Switcher, then tap Print Center.

The badge on the icon shows how many documents are in the queue.

To cancel a print job, select it in Print Center, then tap Cancel Printing.

---

## Print a document

Tap , , , or  (depending on the app you're using), then tap Print. (Swipe up if you don't see Print.)

---

---

# Use iPhone with iPad, Mac, and PC


## Share your internet connection from iPhone

You can use Personal Hotspot to share a cellular internet connection from your iPhone to other devices. Personal Hotspot is useful when the other devices don't have internet access from a Wi-Fi network.

**Note:** Personal Hotspot isn't available with all carriers. Additional fees might apply. The number of devices that can join your Personal Hotspot at one time depends on your carrier and iPhone model. Contact your carrier for more information.

---

### Set up Personal Hotspot on iPhone

Go to Settings  > Cellular, tap Set Up Personal Hotspot, then follow the onscreen instructions.

If you set up your iPhone to use two SIMs, Personal Hotspot uses the line you select for cellular data. See [Set up Dual SIM](#).

**Note:** If Cellular Data is turned on in Settings > Cellular, but you don't see Set Up Personal Hotspot as an option, contact your carrier about adding Personal Hotspot to your plan.

---

### Connect a Mac or PC to your Personal Hotspot

You can use Wi-Fi, a USB cable, or Bluetooth® to connect a Mac or PC to your Personal Hotspot. Do one of the following:

- *Use Wi-Fi to connect from a Mac:* See [Join a Personal Hotspot](#).
- *Use Wi-Fi to connect from a PC:* On your PC, follow the manufacturer directions to connect to a Personal Hotspot.
- *Use USB:* See [Connect iPhone and your computer with a cable](#).
- *Use Bluetooth:* To connect from a Mac, see Use Bluetooth to connect your Mac and iPhone.

To connect from a PC, follow the manufacturer directions to set up a Bluetooth network connection.

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

- For more information about connecting a Mac, see [Use an iPhone or iPad to connect your Mac to the internet](#) in the macOS User Guide.
- For more information about connecting an iPhone, see [Join a Personal Hotspot](#) in the iPhone User Guide.

---

### Connect iPad or another iPhone to your Personal Hotspot

On the other device, go to Settings > Wi-Fi, choose your other device from the list of available networks, then enter the Personal Hotspot password (if prompted).

For more information about connecting an iPad, see [Join a Personal Hotspot](#) in the iPad User Guide.


---

### Turn off Personal Hotspot or change the password

Go to Settings > Personal Hotspot, then do one of the following:

- *Change the password:* Tap Wi-Fi Password and follow the onscreen instructions.
- *Turn off Personal Hotspot:* Turn off Allow Others to Join. All devices using your Personal Hotspot are disconnected.

---

When a Mac is connected to your Personal Hotspot, a blue band appears at the top of your iPhone screen, and the Personal Hotspot icon  appears in the status bar of the connected Mac.

*Note:* If you're signed in with the same Apple ID and you've turned on Bluetooth and Wi-Fi on both devices, you can connect the devices without entering a password.

When you share a Personal Hotspot from your iPhone, it uses cellular data for the internet connection. To monitor your cellular data network usage, go to Settings > Cellular. See [View or change cellular data settings on iPhone](#).

If you use Family Sharing, you can share your Personal Hotspot with any member of your family. See [Set up Family Sharing on iPhone](#).

---

## Allow phone calls on your iPad and Mac

You can make and receive phone calls on your iPad, iPod touch, and Mac by relaying calls through your iPhone.



*Note:* Cellular charges might apply. Wi-Fi Calling is not available from all carriers.

---


## Before you begin

On your iPhone and your other devices, do the following (iOS 9, iPadOS 13, OS X 10.10, or later required):

- [Set up FaceTime.](#)
  - Sign in with the same Apple ID.
- 

## Allow phone calls on your other devices from iPhone

First set up your iPhone, and then set up your other devices.

1. On your iPhone, go to Settings  > Cellular.
2. If your iPhone has Dual SIMs, choose a line (below SIMs).
3. Do any of the following:
  - Tap Calls on Other Devices, turn on Allow Calls on Other Devices, then choose the devices on which you'd like to make and receive calls.

This allows other devices where you're signed in with the same Apple ID to make and receive calls when they're near your iPhone and connected to Wi-Fi.

- Tap Wi-Fi Calling, then turn on Add Wi-Fi Calling For Other Devices.

This allows other devices where you're signed in with the same Apple ID to make and receive calls even when your iPhone isn't nearby.


4. On your other devices, do the following:
  - *On your iPad or iPod touch:* Go to Settings > FaceTime, then turn on FaceTime and Calls from iPhone. If you're asked, turn on Wi-Fi Calling.
  - *On your Mac:* Open FaceTime, choose FaceTime > Preferences > Settings, then select Calls from iPhone. If an Upgrade to Wi-Fi Calling button appears, click it, then follow the instructions.

*Note:* If you enable Wi-Fi Calling, emergency calls can be made over Wi-Fi, and your device's location information can be used for emergency calls to aid response efforts, regardless of whether you enable Location Services. Some carriers might use the address you registered with the carrier when signing up for Wi-Fi Calling as your location.

---

---

## Make or receive a phone call on your iPad or Mac

- *Make a call:* Tap or click a phone number in Contacts, Calendar, FaceTime, Messages, Search, or Safari. Or open FaceTime, enter a contact or phone number, then tap .

If you make a call from another device by relaying it through your iPhone with Dual SIM, the call is made using your default voice line.

- *Receive a call:* Swipe, tap, or click the notification to answer or ignore the call.
- 

For more information about Wi-Fi calls, see the Apple Support article [Make a call with Wi-Fi Calling](#).

---

## Use iPhone as a webcam for Mac or Apple TV

With Continuity Camera, you can use your iPhone as a webcam or microphone for your Mac or Apple TV 4K and take advantage of the powerful iPhone camera and video effects.

---

### Use your iPhone as a webcam for your Mac

Here are some things you can do with Continuity Camera on your Mac:

- [Use your iPhone as a webcam](#) in video apps such as FaceTime.
  - [Insert photos and scans with Continuity Camera](#)—for example, in a document, note, folder, or mail message.
- 

### Use your iPhone as a webcam for Apple TV

Here are some things you can do with Continuity Camera on Apple TV:

- [Use your iPhone as a webcam in FaceTime](#).
  - [Sing along to Apple Music and appear onscreen with visual effects](#).
-

# Hand off tasks between iPhone and your other devices

With Handoff, you can start something on one device (iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Mac, or Apple Watch) and then pick it up on another device right where you left off. For example, you can start answering an email on your iPhone, then finish it in Mail on your Mac. You can use Handoff with many Apple apps—for example, Calendar, Contacts, and Safari. Some third-party apps might also work with Handoff.

---

## Before you begin

To hand off tasks between iPhone and another device, make sure of the following:

- You're signed in with the same Apple ID on both devices.
- On your Mac, you've turned on Wi-Fi, Bluetooth®, and Handoff.
- On your iPhone and on another iPhone or iPad, you've turned on Wi-Fi, Bluetooth, and Handoff.
- Your devices are within Bluetooth range of one another (about 33 feet or 10 meters).
- Each device has the minimum required software version installed: iOS 10, iPadOS 13, macOS 10.10, watchOS 1.0, or later.

---

## Hand off from another device to your iPhone

1. Open the App Switcher on iPhone. The Handoff icon of the app you're using on your other device appears at the bottom of the iPhone screen.
2. Tap the Handoff icon to continue working in the app.

---



## Hand off from iPhone to another device

On the other device, click or tap the Handoff icon to continue working in the app.

The Handoff icon of the app you're using on iPhone appears in the following locations on other devices:

- *Mac*: The right end of the Dock (or at the bottom, depending on the Dock position).
  - *iPad*: The right end of the Dock.
  - *iPhone or iPod touch*: At the bottom of the App Switcher screen.
-

## Turn off Handoff on your devices

- *iPad, iPhone, and iPod touch:* Go to Settings  > General > AirPlay & Handoff.
- *macOS 13:* Choose Apple menu  > System Settings, click General in the sidebar, click AirDrop & Handoff on the right, then turn off Allow Handoff between this Mac and your iCloud devices.
- *macOS 12.5 or earlier:* Choose Apple menu > System Preferences, click General, then deselect "Allow Handoff between this Mac and your iCloud devices."

---

**Tip:** When Handoff is on, you can [use Universal Clipboard](#) to copy and paste text, images, photos, and videos across devices.

## Cut, copy, and paste between iPhone and other devices

You can use Universal Clipboard to cut or copy content (a block of text or an image, for example) on your iPhone, then paste it on iPad, on another iPhone, or Mac computer, and vice versa.

*Note:* For information about cutting, copying, and pasting text within or between apps only on your iPhone, see [Select, cut, copy, and paste text on iPhone](#).

---

### Before you begin

To cut or copy and paste between iPhone and another device, make sure of the following:

- You're signed in with the same Apple ID on both devices.
- On your Mac, you've turned on Wi-Fi, Bluetooth®, and Handoff.
- On your iPhone and on another iPhone or iPad, you've turned on Wi-Fi, Bluetooth, and Handoff.
- Your devices are within Bluetooth range of one another (about 33 feet or 10 meters).
- Each device has the minimum relevant software version installed: iOS 10, iPadOS 13, macOS 10.12, or later.

## Copy, cut, or paste

- *Copy*: Pinch closed with three fingers.
- *Cut*: Pinch closed with three fingers two times.
- *Paste*: Pinch open with three fingers.

You can also touch and hold a selection, then tap Cut, Copy, or Paste.

**Important:** You need to cut, copy, and paste your content within a short period of time.

For more information about selecting text or placing the insertion point, see [Type with the onscreen keyboard on iPhone](#).

---



# Use AirPlay to stream video or mirror the screen of your iPhone

You can use AirPlay to stream videos, photos, and audio from your iPhone to a nearby Mac or TV. You can also mirror exactly what's on your iPhone screen.

---

## Set up a Mac to allow streaming from your iPhone

1. On a Mac, do one of the following:

- *macOS 13 or later*: Choose Apple menu  > System Settings, then click General in the sidebar. (You might need to scroll down.) Click AirDrop & Handoff on the right, then turn on AirPlay Receiver.
- *macOS 12.5 or earlier*: Choose Apple menu  > System Preferences, click Sharing, then select and turn on AirPlay Receiver.

2. Choose an option for "Allow AirPlay for":

- To allow only devices where you're signed in with the same Apple ID as on the Mac to stream to the Mac, select "Current user."
- To allow others, select "Anyone on the same network" or Everyone.





To require a password to use AirPlay with the Mac, select the option, then enter a password in the text field.

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

If you choose the option “Anyone on the same network” or “Everyone,” and someone is signed in to their device with a different Apple ID than on the Mac, an AirPlay request initially requires acceptance on the Mac and verification on the other device. On the Mac, accept the AirPlay request. If the Mac displays an AirPlay code, enter the code on the other device.

---

### Stream photos or videos from your iPhone to a Mac or TV

1. Connect your iPhone to the same Wi-Fi network as your Apple TV 4K , AirPlay-compatible smart TV, or Mac.
2. Find the video that you want to stream.
3. Tap AirPlay . In some apps, you might need to tap a different button first. For example, in the Photos app , tap Share , then tap AirPlay.

**COMMENT:** #ba #tv-movies

4. Choose your Mac or TV from the list.




To change the playback destination, choose a different AirPlay option on your iPhone screen.

To show video playback controls on the Mac, move the pointer over the video playing on the Mac screen.

To stop streaming, tap AirPlay in the app that you’re streaming from, then tap your iPhone in the list.




## Mirror your iPhone on a Mac or TV

1. Connect your iPhone to the same Wi-Fi network as your Apple TV 4K, AirPlay-compatible smart TV, or Mac.
2. Open Control Center on your iPhone.
3. Tap , then choose your Mac or TV as the playback destination.

To switch back, open Control Center, tap , then tap Stop Mirroring.


---

## Play audio from iPhone on Mac or TV

1. On your iPhone, open an audio app (such as Podcasts  or Music ) , then choose an item to play.
2. Tap , then choose a playback destination.

**COMMENT:** #ba #podcasts



To select the playback destination, you can also tap  on the Lock Screen or in Control Center.

**Note:** Using AirPlay to stream to a Mac requires iPhone 7 or later, along with a supported Mac.



Older iPhone models can share content at a lower resolution with supported Mac models when the “Allow AirPlay for” menu in Sharing preferences is set to or “Everyone” or “Anyone on the same network”.

## Start a SharePlay session by holding two iPhone devices close together

With SharePlay, you can instantly stream supported content, listen to music, play games, and more in sync by holding your iPhone close to your friend’s iPhone.

### Start a SharePlay session

1. On your iPhone, in an app that supports SharePlay, tap the content you want to share.
2. Hold your iPhone next to the iPhone of the person you want to share with.

If they’re not in your contacts (or vice versa), you’ll first need to share your contact information with them. See [Use NameDrop on iPhone to share your contact information with new people](#).

3. Tap SharePlay.

The person you want to share with can accept or decline your SharePlay invitation.

*Note:* Requires iOS 17 or later on both iPhone devices. AirDrop must be turned on, and the sender and recipient must be included in each other’s Contacts app. Some apps that support SharePlay require a subscription. To watch a movie or TV show together, each participant must have access to the content on their own device, through either a subscription or purchase, on a device that meets the minimum system requirements. SharePlay might not support sharing some movies or TV shows across different countries or regions.

## Use AirDrop on iPhone to send items to nearby devices




With AirDrop, you can wirelessly send your photos, videos, websites, locations, and more to other nearby devices and Mac computers.

AirDrop transfers information using Wi-Fi and Bluetooth®, so both must be turned on. To use AirDrop, you need to be signed in with your Apple ID. Transfers are encrypted for security.

The recipient can accept or decline each transfer as it arrives. Cellular charges might apply.

---

### Send an item using AirDrop

1. Open the item on your iPhone, then tap , Share, AirDrop, , or another button that displays the app's sharing options.
2. Tap , then tap the AirDrop user you want to share with. (You can also use AirDrop to share between your own devices.)


**Tip:** If you're within close range of someone in your contacts, you can initiate a transfer by opening the file you want to share, then moving your iPhone close to your contact's iPhone (supported models and iOS 17 required).

If the person doesn't appear on your iPhone as a nearby AirDrop user, ask them to open Control Center and allow AirDrop to receive items. To send to someone on a Mac, ask them to allow themselves to be discovered in AirDrop in the Finder.

You can also use AirDrop to securely share app and website passwords with someone using an iPhone, iPad, or Mac. See [Share passkeys and passwords securely with AirDrop on iPhone](#).

---

### Allow others to send items to your iPhone using AirDrop

1. Open Control Center, touch and hold the top-left group of controls, then tap .
2. Tap Contacts Only or Everyone for 10 Minutes to choose who you want to receive items from.

**Note:** The Contacts Only and Everyone for 10 Minutes options are available only on devices with minimum system requirements.

---

## Connect iPhone and your computer with a cable

You can use a cable to directly connect your iPhone to a Mac with OS X 10.9 or later, or to a PC with Windows 7 or later.

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

Using the charging cable for your iPhone, connect iPhone to the USB port on your computer. If the cable isn't compatible with the port on your computer, you'll need to use an adapter (sold separately).

*Note:* If an alert appears on your iPhone asking whether to trust this computer, select Trust. See the Apple Support article [About the 'Trust This Computer' alert](#).

---

After you connect your iPhone to a computer with a cable, you can do any of the following:

- [Set up iPhone](#) for the first time.
  - [Share your iPhone internet connection](#) with your computer.
  - [Use your computer to erase all content and settings](#) from iPhone.
  - [Update iPhone](#) using your computer.
  - [Sync content or transfer files](#) between your iPhone and computer.
- 

The iPhone battery charges when iPhone is connected to your computer and your computer is connected to power.

---

# Transfer files between your iPhone and computer

## Transfer files between your iPhone and your computer

There are multiple ways to transfer your photos, videos, and other files between your iPhone and computer.

- *Quickly transfer files wirelessly:* See [Use AirDrop on iPhone to send items to nearby devices](#).
- *Use iCloud:* See [Automatically keep your files up to date with iCloud](#).
- *Use an external storage device, a file server, or a service like Box or DropBox:* See [Transfer files using an external storage device, a file server, or a cloud storage service on iPhone](#).
- *Use a cable:* See [Connect iPhone and your computer with a cable](#).

**Important:** Transferring, sharing, or syncing might be restricted for some types of data, such as files saved in an app's proprietary format, files saved in older software versions, and files protected by copyrights.

## Transfer files wirelessly between your iPhone and computer with email, messages, or AirDrop

---

### Use email to transfer files

- To transfer files using Mail on your iPhone, see [Add email attachments in Mail on iPhone](#) and [Download email attachments in Mail on iPhone](#).
  - To transfer files using Mail on your Mac, see [Add attachments to emails in Mail on Mac](#) and [Save email attachments in Mail on Mac](#).
- 

### Use text messages to transfer files

- To transfer files using Messages on your iPhone, see [Send an item using AirDrop](#).
- To transfer files using Messages on your Mac, see [Send photos and videos in Messages on Mac](#).

---

## Use AirDrop to transfer files

- To transfer files using AirDrop on your iPhone, see [Use AirDrop on iPhone to send items to nearby devices](#).
- To transfer files using AirDrop on your Mac, see [Use AirDrop on your Mac to send files to devices near you](#).

Files sent to your iPhone are located in the app where you saved the file or in the app that opens automatically when the file is received. Files sent to your Mac are located in the app where you saved the file or in the Downloads folder.

---

## Transfer files or sync content between your iPhone and computer with the Finder or iTunes

You can [connect your iPhone to a computer](#) to do the following:

- Transfer files used by iPhone apps that support file sharing.
- Sync supported content like movies and podcasts.

Depending on your computer, you use either the Finder or iTunes on your computer to transfer files and sync content.

### Transfer files for supported apps

You can transfer files by copying them from one device to another using the Finder or iTunes. Only files from iPhone apps that support file sharing can be transferred.

- *To transfer files with your Mac (macOS 10.15 or later):* See the Apple Support article [Use the Finder to share files between your Mac and your iPhone](#).
- *To transfer files with your PC or Mac (macOS 10.14 or earlier):* See the Apple Support article [Use iTunes to share files between your computer and your iOS or iPadOS device](#).

### Sync supported content

Syncing with the Finder or iTunes keeps supported content up to date between your iPhone and computer. For example, you can set up syncing so that when you add a movie to your iPhone, it also appears on your computer. After you set up syncing between your devices with a cable, you can set them to sync wirelessly and automatically whenever they're connected to the same Wi-Fi network.

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

You can sync content like music, movies, TV shows, podcasts, photos, contacts, and calendars.

- *To sync content with your Mac (macOS 10.15 or later):* See [Sync content between your Mac and iPhone or iPad](#) in the macOS User Guide.
- *To sync content with your PC or Mac (macOS 10.14 or earlier):* See the Apple Support article [Use iTunes to sync your iPhone or iPad with your computer](#).

If the files you want to share between your iPhone and computer aren't supported by syncing or transferring with the Finder or iTunes, see [Transfer files between your iPhone and your computer](#) for other options.

## Automatically keep your files up to date on your iPhone and computer with iCloud

You can store your files, photos, videos, and more in iCloud so you can access them and keep them synced on all your devices. Any change you make to a file on a device that's signed in to iCloud appears on all devices that are signed in.

You can also access your information in iCloud from anywhere by using a supported web browser. See [System requirements for iCloud](#).

**Important:** OS X 10.10 (or later) or Windows 7 (or later) are required. You must be signed in with your Apple ID on both your iPhone and your computer, along with any web browsers you might be using.

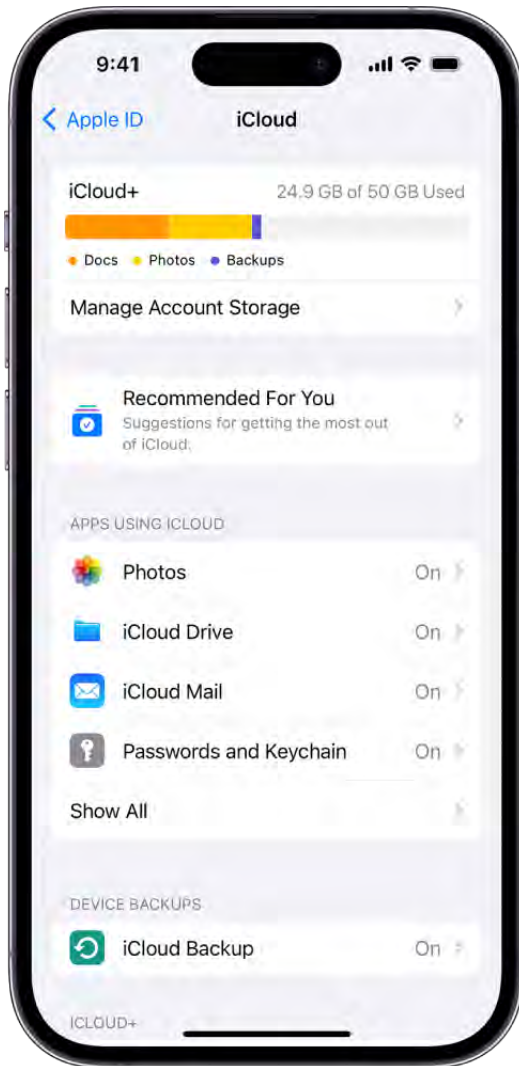
---

## Set up iCloud on your iPhone

1. On your iPhone, go to Settings  > [your name].

If you don't see [your name], tap "Sign in to your [device]," then enter your Apple ID and password.

2. Tap iCloud, then turn on items you want to keep there.



For example, turn on iCloud Drive to make your files in iCloud Drive available to your computer.

---

## Set up iCloud on your Mac

1. Follow the instructions to [set up iCloud features on Mac](#) in the macOS User Guide.
  2. Turn on the same items that you turned on for iPhone.
-

## Set up iCloud on your PC

1. Follow the instructions to [set up iCloud](#) in the iCloud for Windows User Guide.
  2. Turn on the same items that you turned on for iPhone, then click Apply.
- 

iCloud comes with an email account and 5 GB of free storage for your data. For more storage and additional features, you can [subscribe to iCloud+](#).

*Note:* Some iCloud features have minimum system requirements. iCloud might not be available in all areas, and iCloud features might vary by area. See the Apple Support article [System requirements for iCloud](#). For information about features, go to [apple.com/icloud/](https://apple.com/icloud/).

## Transfer files using an external storage device, a file server, or a cloud storage service on iPhone

---

### Transfer files with an external storage device

1. Connect your iPhone or computer to an external storage device, such as a USB drive or SD card.

To connect to iPhone, you might need a cable adapter. See [Connect external storage devices to iPhone](#).

**Note:** If an alert appears on iPhone asking whether to trust this computer, select Trust. (See the Apple Support article [About the 'Trust This Computer' alert](#).)


2. Use a supported app (like Files or Pages) to copy files to the storage device. See [Organize files and folders in Files on iPhone](#).
  3. Disconnect the storage device, then connect it to the device where you want the copied files to appear.
  4. Copy the files to the connected device. See [Connect and use other storage devices with Mac](#) in the macOS User Guide.
-



---

## Transfer files with a file server

*Note:* If you have a Mac, you can set it up as a file server on a local network, such as your Wi-Fi network. See [Set up file sharing on Mac](#) in the macOS User Guide.

1. Connect to the file server from your iPhone [using the Files app](#).
2. Connect your Mac or PC to the file server (unless your computer is the file server). See [Connect your Mac to shared computers and servers](#) in the macOS User Guide.
3. Use the file server to transfer files between your iPhone and computer.
4. When you're finished, disconnect your iPhone from the file server by tapping  next to the server.

---

## Transfer files with a cloud storage service like Box or Dropbox

*Note:* Subscription fees might apply.

1. On your iPhone or computer, follow the instructions from your cloud storage service to upload the files you want to share.
2. To access your shared files on iPhone, open Files, tap Browse at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the storage service below Locations.

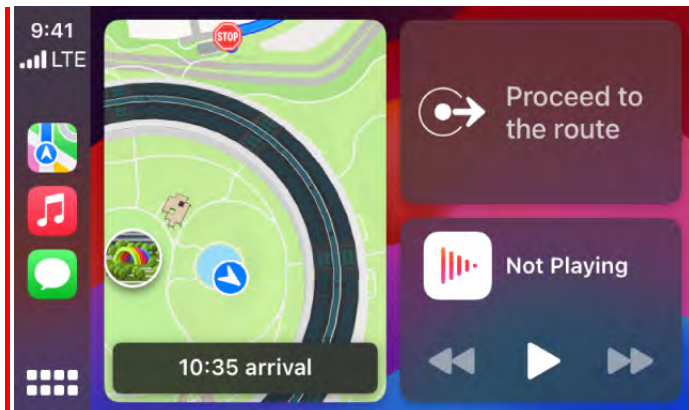
To access the shared files on a computer, follow the service's instructions.

---

# CarPlay

## Intro to CarPlay and iPhone

Connect your iPhone to CarPlay to get turn-by-turn directions, make phone calls, listen to music, check your calendar, and more—all from your vehicle's display.



*Note:* CarPlay isn't available in all countries or regions (see the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#)).


CarPlay is available on select automobiles (see the [CarPlay Available Models website](#)) and on select aftermarket navigation systems.

**WARNING:** For important information about avoiding distractions that could lead to dangerous situations, see [Important safety information for iPhone](#).

## Connect iPhone to CarPlay

Set up CarPlay by connecting your iPhone and your vehicle using your vehicle's USB port or its wireless capability.

### Ensure that Siri is enabled on iPhone

If Siri is not enabled on your iPhone, go to Settings  > Siri & Search, then turn on one of the following:

- Press Side Button for Siri (on an iPhone with Face ID)
- Press Home for Siri (on other iPhone models)

---


## Connect using USB

Connect iPhone to your vehicle's USB port using an Apple-approved Lightning or USB-C to USB cable.

The USB port may be labeled with the CarPlay logo or an image of a smartphone.

---

## Connect wirelessly

1. On a vehicle that supports wireless CarPlay, do one of the following (see your owner's guide for detailed instructions):
  - Press and hold the voice command button on your steering wheel.
  - Make sure your vehicle is in wireless or Bluetooth pairing mode.
2. On your iPhone, go to Settings  > General > CarPlay > Available Cars.
3. Choose your vehicle.

*Note:* Some vehicles that support wireless CarPlay allow you to pair simply by plugging iPhone into your vehicle's USB port using a Lightning or USB-C to USB cable. If supported, after you start CarPlay using USB, you're asked if you want to pair wireless CarPlay for future use. If you agree, the next time you go for a drive, iPhone connects wirelessly to CarPlay automatically.

---

*Note:* After connecting to CarPlay on some electric vehicles, use the Maps app to identify the vehicle for EV routing. See [Set up electric vehicle routing in Maps on iPhone](#).

On some vehicle models, CarPlay Home appears automatically when you connect iPhone.

If CarPlay Home doesn't appear, select the CarPlay logo on your vehicle's display.





## Use Siri to Control CarPlay

CarPlay uses Siri voice control, so you can ask for what you want. (You can also [use your car's built-in controls](#) to control CarPlay.)

---

## Use Siri on CarPlay

1. Do one of the following until Siri beeps:
  - Press and hold the voice command button on the steering wheel.
  - Touch and hold the CarPlay Dashboard  or CarPlay Home  button on a touchscreen displaying CarPlay.
  - You can also say "Hey Siri" to activate Siri in supported vehicles.
2. Use Siri to ask a question or to do something.

**Siri:** Say something like:

- "Get directions to the nearest coffee shop"
- "Call Eliza Block"
- "Play more songs like this one"
- "Show me the map"
- "What's my next meeting?"
- "What's the weather for today?"
- "Remind me to pack an umbrella when I get home"

---

**Tip:** Instead of waiting for Siri to notice that you've stopped talking, you can press and continue to hold the voice command button on the steering wheel while you speak, then release it when you finish.



Siri also makes suggestions in CarPlay for what you might want to do next, such as operate the garage door when you arrive home or drive to your next meeting. See [About Siri Suggestions](#).



## Use your vehicle's built-in controls to control CarPlay

CarPlay works with your vehicle's built-in controls—for example, a touchscreen, a rotary knob, or a touchpad. To learn how to operate your display, see the owner's guide that came with your vehicle. (You can also [use Siri](#) to control CarPlay.)

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

- *Open an app:* Tap the app on the touchscreen, or turn the rotary knob to select the app, then press the knob.
- *Switch between CarPlay Dashboard and CarPlay Home:* CarPlay Dashboard displays several items you likely want to view or control, such as driving directions, audio playback, and suggestions from Siri. CarPlay Home shows all your CarPlay apps organized into pages.

To go to CarPlay Home, tap  on the touchscreen, or turn the rotary knob to select , then press the knob.

To go to CarPlay Dashboard, tap , or turn the rotary knob to select , then press the knob.

- *Return to your vehicle's Home Screen:* Select the icon with your vehicle's logo if it appears on CarPlay Home or, if available, the physical Home button on your radio.
- *Return to a recently used app:* Tap its icon on the edge of the touchscreen, or turn the rotary knob to the icon, then press the knob.
- *View additional apps:* If you have more than eight apps, some may appear on another page of CarPlay Home. To view them, swipe left on the touchscreen, or turn the rotary knob. (See [Use other apps with CarPlay.](#))
- *Scroll quickly through a list:* Tap the letters in the list on the right side of the touchscreen, or turn the rotary knob.
- *Control audio playback:* Use the audio playback controls on CarPlay Dashboard. Or from CarPlay Home, select Now Playing to view and control the current audio app.

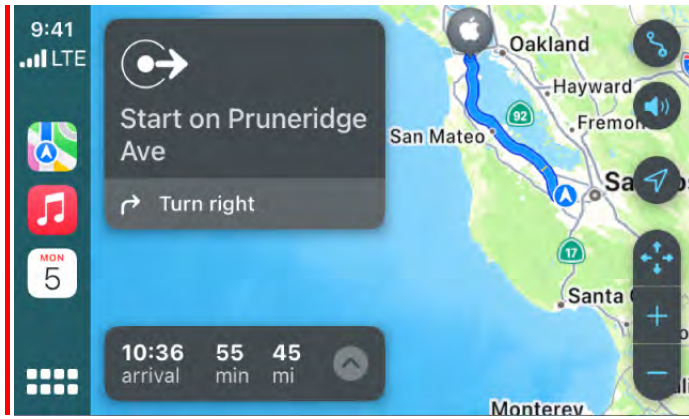
---

## Get turn-by-turn directions with CarPlay

Use Siri or open Maps to get turn-by-turn directions, traffic conditions, and estimated travel time (not available in all regions).

*Note:* To get directions, iPhone must be connected to the internet, and Location Services must be on. (See [Control the location information you share on iPhone.](#))

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL



## Find a route


CarPlay generates likely destinations using addresses from your email, text messages, contacts, and calendars—as well as places you frequent. You can also search for a location, use locations you saved as favorites and in collections, and find nearby attractions and services.

**Siri:** Say something like:

- “Find a gas station”
- “Give me directions home”
- “Take me to the Golden Gate Bridge”
- “Find a charging station”
- “Find coffee near me”




### [Learn how to use Siri](#)

Or you can use your vehicle’s built-in controls to open Maps in CarPlay and select a route.

*Note:* If you’re viewing CarPlay Dashboard and Maps doesn’t appear in the recent apps list on the left, tap  to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including Maps.

1. With Maps open in CarPlay, do one of the following:
  - Select a place you saved as a favorite. (See [Save favorite places in Maps on iPhone](#).)

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

- Select Destinations, then select a recent destination or scroll to select a destination you saved in a collection. (See [Organize places in My Guides in Maps on iPhone](#).)
  - Select Search, then select  to speak a search phrase, or select  to use the onscreen keyboard (if available). You can also select a destination from a category of nearby services, such as Parking or Restaurants.
2. If multiple routes appear, use your vehicle's controls to select the route you prefer.
  3. To call your destination before you leave, select .
  4. To start turn-by-turn directions, select Go.

Maps shows directions from your current location.





When you arrive at your destination and exit your vehicle, a parked car marker appears in Maps on iPhone so you can easily [find your way](#) back to your vehicle.

---

### Follow turn-by-turn directions

As CarPlay follows your progress, it speaks turn-by-turn directions to your destination.

Do any of the following at any time during your trip:

- *Add a stop to your driving directions:* Select the ETA display at the bottom left, select Add Stop, then choose a destination or use Siri to search for one.
- *End directions at any time:* Say something to Siri like "Stop navigating," or select the estimated time of arrival (ETA) display at the bottom left, then choose End Route.
- *Mute turn-by-turn directions:* Tap , then choose  to mute all directions.
- *Mute turn-by-turn directions, except for alerts and hazards:* Tap , then choose .
- *Make a quick detour:* Say something to Siri like "Find a gas station." Or select the ETA display, select Search, select a suggested service, then choose a destination.
- *Share your ETA:* Select the ETA display at the bottom left, select Share ETA, then choose one or more suggested contacts.

People using devices with iOS 13.1, iPadOS 13.1, or later receive a Maps notification with your ETA, and they can track your progress in Maps. People using devices with earlier versions receive the notification through iMessage. People using other mobile devices receive an SMS message. (Standard carrier data and text rates may apply.)

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

To stop sending ETA information, select Sharing ETA at the bottom of the CarPlay screen, then choose a contact.

*Note:* For navigation apps that support the CarPlay Dashboard, Dashboard shows the last navigation app opened if no apps are navigating, the one that is actively navigating, or the last opened and actively navigating app if multiple apps are navigating.

---

## Report traffic incidents in CarPlay

In select regions and countries, you can report accidents, hazards, speed checks, and road work (features vary by region and country).


---

### Report an incident

**Siri:** Say something like:

- "Report an accident"
- "There's something on the road"
- "There's a speed check here"

#### [Learn how to use Siri](#)



Or with turn-by-turn directions showing, you can select , then choose from one of the available options.

Apple evaluates incoming incident reports. When there's a high level of confidence in the reports, incident markers for Accident, Hazard, and Road Work are displayed in Maps for other users.

*Note:* Speed checks are not displayed with incident markers. Instead, notifications for speed checks appear when you follow turn-by-turn directions.

---

### Report on the status of a hazard or accident

Incident markers show information about hazards  and accidents . When you're near their locations, you can report their status.

**Siri:** Say something like: "The hazard is gone" or "Clear the accident." [Learn how to use Siri.](#)




Or, you can do the following:

1. Select the incident marker.
2. Select Cleared or Still Here.

*Note:* You can't clear reports of speed checks.

Apple evaluates incoming incident reports. When there's a high level of confidence in reports that an incident has been cleared, its incident marker is removed from Maps.

*Note:* Apple is committed to keeping personal information safe and private. To learn more, go to Settings  > Maps, then tap About Apple Maps and Privacy.






---

## Change the map view in CarPlay

Find your location on a map, zoom in and out, and move the map to see the detail you need.

---


When you [follow turn-by-turn directions](#), you can tap the touchscreen or turn the rotary knob, then do one of the following:

- *Switch between detailed and high-level views:* To see a detailed 3D map with your heading at the top of the screen, select . To see the route overview in 2D with north at the top of the screen, select .
- *Zoom in or out:* Select  or .
- *Scroll the map:* Select , then select a direction arrow on one of the edges of the screen. To return to turn-by-turn directions, tap Resume.






On some touchscreens, you can also drag the map to scroll it.

---

You can also change the map view when not following directions. Tap the touchscreen or turn the rotary knob, then do one of the following:

- *Show your current location:* Tap . Your position is marked in the middle of the map.
- *View a 3D map:* Tap 3D. To return to a 2D map, tap 2D.

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

- *Show your heading at the top of the screen:* Tap . To resume showing north at the top, tap .
- *Zoom in or out:* Select  or .
- *Scroll the map:* Select , then select a direction arrow at the edges of the screen. When finished, tap Done.


## Make and receive phone calls with CarPlay

Use CarPlay to make phone calls and listen to voicemail from your iPhone.

**Siri:** Say something like: “Call Eliza.” [Learn how to use Siri.](#)

Or you can use your vehicle’s built-in controls to help make a call.

Open Phone in CarPlay, then select an option.

*Note:* If you’re viewing CarPlay Dashboard and Phone doesn’t appear in the recent apps list on the left, tap  to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including Phone.

## Play music with CarPlay

Use Siri or open Music in CarPlay to play music that’s available on your iPhone—including songs, artists, albums, playlists, and Radio.

**COMMENT:** #ba #music

**Siri:** Say something like:

- “Let’s hear the Acoustic playlist”
- “Play ‘You Need to Calm Down’ by Taylor Swift”
- “Play more songs like this one”
- “Play the rest of this album”
- “Skip this song”
- “Repeat this song”
- “Shuffle this playlist”


- “Tune into ESPN Radio”








### [Learn how to use Siri](#)

If Siri doesn't find what you asked for, be more specific. For example, say “Play the radio station ‘Pure Pop’” rather than saying “Play ‘Pure Pop.’”

You can also use the controls on your vehicle's steering wheel, buttons on the Now Playing screen, and CarPlay Dashboard to control music playback.

You can also play music together using SharePlay, see [Play music together in the car with iPhone](#).

*Note:* If you're viewing CarPlay Dashboard, tap  to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including Music.

Button	Description
	Pause playback.
	Play the current song.
	Skip to the next song. When pressed and held, fast forward through the current song.
	Return to the song's beginning. When pressed again, return to the previous song. When pressed and held, rewind through the current song.
	Play songs in random order.
	Continually repeat the current song.
	Display controls to create a custom station based on the current song and to rate the current song.
Up Next	Display a list of songs queued for playback. (You can select a song from the list to skip the songs that proceed it.)

On some systems, Now Playing displays only a partial list of choices while you're driving. To choose among options not in the list, select More at the bottom of the screen, or use Siri by pressing and holding the voice command button on your steering wheel.

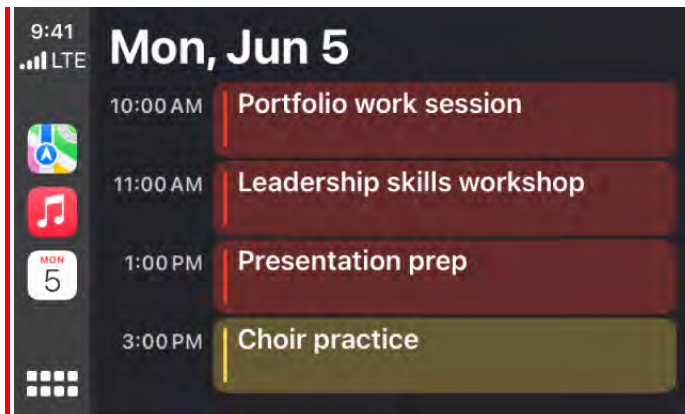
## View your Calendar with CarPlay


Use Siri or open Calendar in CarPlay to view events, appointments, and meetings.

**Siri:** Say something like: “Do I have a meeting at 10?” or “Where is my 3:30 meeting?”

[Learn how to use Siri.](#)

Upcoming events appear in CarPlay Dashboard. You can also use your vehicle’s built-in controls to open Calendar in CarPlay to view upcoming events.



*Note:* If you’re viewing CarPlay Dashboard, tap  to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including Calendar.

To see more information about an event, select it. Options may allow you to get directions to the event or phone into it.

## Send and receive text messages with CarPlay

Use CarPlay to send, hear, and reply to text messages from your iPhone.


**Siri:** Say something like:


- “Text my wife”
- “Text Eliza Block I’m in traffic and I’ll be 15 minutes late to the meeting”
- “Read my text messages”

[Learn how to use Siri](#)


---

Or you can use your vehicle's built-in controls to help send and receive messages. Open Messages in CarPlay, then do one of the following:

- *Hear unread messages or respond to a thread:* Select a conversation.
- *Start a new conversation:* Select .
- *Automatically send messages:* Skip the confirmation step when sending messages with Siri to send messages automatically, unless you ask to change or cancel it.


In CarPlay, go to Settings  > Siri and Suggestions, then select Automatically Send Messages.

---

*Note:* If you're viewing CarPlay Dashboard and Messages doesn't appear in the recent apps list on the left, tap  to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including Messages.

## Announce incoming text messages with CarPlay

Use CarPlay to have Siri automatically read your incoming text messages and listen for your response.

- 
1. On your iPhone, go to Settings  > Siri & Search > Announce Notifications, then turn on Announce Notifications.
  2. Tap CarPlay, then choose any of the following:
    - *Announce New Messages:* CarPlay starts your drive with Announce Messages active and reads your incoming text messages aloud.
    - *Silence New Messages:* CarPlay starts your drive with Announce Messages silenced and doesn't read incoming text messages automatically.
    - *Remember Previous Setting:* CarPlay remembers whether Announce Messages were active or silenced from the previous drive.

---


*Note:* You can also enable or disable Announce Messages directly in CarPlay by tapping Announce when Siri reads an incoming text message.

See [Have Siri announce notifications](#).






## Play podcasts with CarPlay

Use CarPlay to play the podcasts that are on your iPhone.

You can use your vehicles's built-in controls to open Podcasts and select a podcast to play.

*Note:* If you're viewing CarPlay Dashboard, tap  to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including Podcasts.

You can also use the controls on your vehicle's steering wheel, the buttons on the Now Playing screen, and CarPlay Dashboard to control podcast playback.

Button	Description
	Play
	Pause
	Jump back 15 seconds
	Jump forward 30 seconds
	Choose a faster or slower playback speed


## Play audiobooks with CarPlay

Use CarPlay to play the audiobooks that are on your iPhone.

**COMMENT:** [#ba](#) [#books](#)

**Siri:** Say something like: "Play Pride and Prejudice audiobook" or "Rewind 15 seconds." [Learn how to use Siri](#).


Or you can use your vehicles's built-in controls to open Audiobooks and select a book to play. You can also use the controls on your vehicle's steering wheel, buttons on the Now Playing screen, and CarPlay Dashboard to control audiobook playback.

*Note:* If you're viewing CarPlay Dashboard, tap  to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including Audiobooks.






## Listen to news stories with CarPlay

Use CarPlay to listen to Apple News Today audio briefings and, if you're an Apple News+ subscriber, audio versions of select news stories. (If you aren't a subscriber, you can listen to story previews.)

You can use your vehicles's built-in controls to open News and select a story to play.

*Note:* If you're viewing CarPlay Dashboard and News doesn't appear in the recent apps list on the left, tap  to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including News.

You can also use the controls on your vehicle's steering wheel, the buttons on the Now Playing screen, and CarPlay Dashboard to control playback.

Button	Description
	Pause playback.
	Play the current story.
	Skip to the next story.
	Jump back 15 seconds.
	Choose a faster or slower playback speed.

*Note:* CarPlay isn't available in all countries or regions (see the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#)).

## Control your home from CarPlay

You can use suggestions from Siri that appear on CarPlay Dashboard or use Siri directly to control HomeKit-enabled accessories, such as garage doors, lights, and door locks.

**Siri:** Say something like:

- "Open the garage door"
- "Did I leave the garage door open?"
- "Close the garage door"
- "Lock the front door"

- “Turn on the lights”
- “Turn off the lights”

[Learn how to use Siri](#)

## Use other apps with CarPlay

You can use Siri with CarPlay to access many of the apps on iPhone, including Reminders, Clock, Weather, and more.

**Siri:** Say something like:

- “Remind me to pack an umbrella when I get home”
- “Add milk to my grocery list”
- “Set my alarm for 6:00 a.m. tomorrow”
- “What’s the weather for today?”

[Learn how to use Siri](#)





CarPlay works with select third-party apps that you download to your iPhone. Compatible apps—including audio, navigation, messaging, and voice-calling apps, and apps made by your vehicle manufacturer—show up automatically on CarPlay Home and can be controlled with Siri. For example, you can use Siri to give you directions from your favorite navigation app. CarPlay also works with additional third-party apps for EV charging, parking, and quick food ordering.

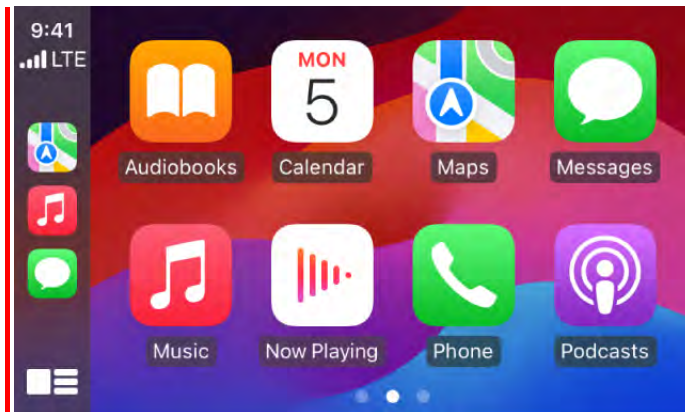
*Note:* Compatible third-party navigation apps appear on CarPlay Dashboard while in use. When you’re not actively navigating, or if you’re navigating using more than one app, CarPlay Dashboard displays the last compatible navigation app that was used.



# Rearrange the icons on CarPlay Home

---

1. When you're not operating your vehicle, open Settings on your iPhone, go to General > CarPlay, select your vehicle, then tap Customize.
  2. Do one of the following:
    - *Move an icon:* Drag  up or down in the list.
    - *Remove an icon:* Tap  next to the icon, then tap Remove.  
  
Only icons that have  next to them can be removed.
    - *Add an icon back to CarPlay:* Below More Apps at the bottom of the page, tap  next to the icon.
- 



Your icon changes appear on CarPlay Home the next time you connect to CarPlay.

## Change settings in CarPlay


In Settings in CarPlay, you can change the Wallpaper, turn on Driving Focus, change how CarPlay looks on the display, turn suggestions in CarPlay Dashboard on or off, and show or hide album art.

---

### Use the Driving Focus with CarPlay

The Driving Focus helps you stay focused on the road. While your iPhone is connected to CarPlay and Driving Focus is on, notifications and text messages are silenced or limited.

1. Open Settings in CarPlay using your vehicle's built-in controls.

*Note:* If you're viewing CarPlay Dashboard and Settings doesn't appear in the recent apps list on the left, tap  to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including Settings.

2. Go to Driving Focus, then select Activate With CarPlay.

If you receive a Driving Focus notification when you're not driving (for example, when you're a passenger) you can turn it off—tap the notification, then tap "I'm not driving."

---

### **Switch the appearance of CarPlay**

CarPlay is set to dark appearance by default in most vehicles. If you prefer to have CarPlay automatically switch between dark and light appearance, do the following:

1. Open Settings in CarPlay using your vehicle's built-in controls.
2. Select Appearance.
3. Select Always Dark.

The dark appearance is optimized for viewing in low-light environments, such as at night.

---

### **Change the wallpaper in CarPlay**

Open Settings in CarPlay using your vehicle's built-in controls, select Wallpaper, then choose one of the available options.

---

### **Hide or show suggestions in CarPlay Dashboard**

Open Settings in CarPlay using your vehicle's built-in controls, then turn Suggestions in CarPlay off or on.

---

### **Hide or show album art**

Open Settings in CarPlay using your vehicle's built-in controls, then turn Show Album Art off or on.

---

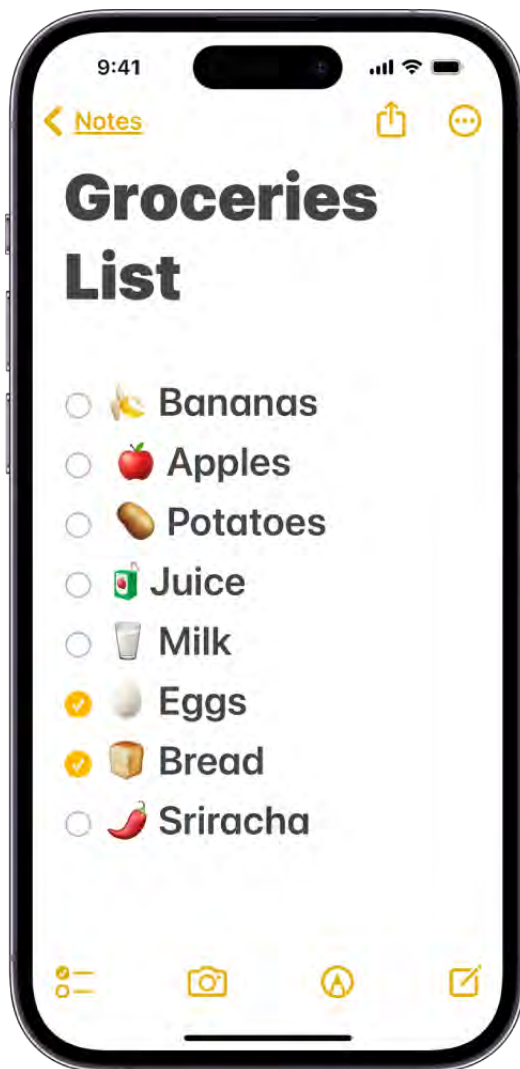
# Accessibility

## Get started with accessibility features on iPhone

iPhone provides many accessibility features and settings to support your vision, mobility, hearing, speech, and cognitive needs.

These features make your iPhone easier to use, whether you need them temporarily or on an ongoing basis.

You can set many of these up when you turn on your iPhone for the first time (see [Turn on accessibility features to set up your iPhone](#)), or you can turn them on later.



### Vision

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

You can change screen colors and text size, zoom in, reduce transparency, and more. You can also hear what's onscreen, or operate your iPhone with your voice.

Learn more about [vision-related accessibility features](#)



## Mobility

You can navigate your iPhone hands-free, or you can use your voice or connect a switch, mouse, or other input. You can also control other devices, customize gestures and alerts, and adjust how sensitively iPhone responds to your tap or touch.

Learn more about [mobility-related accessibility features](#)

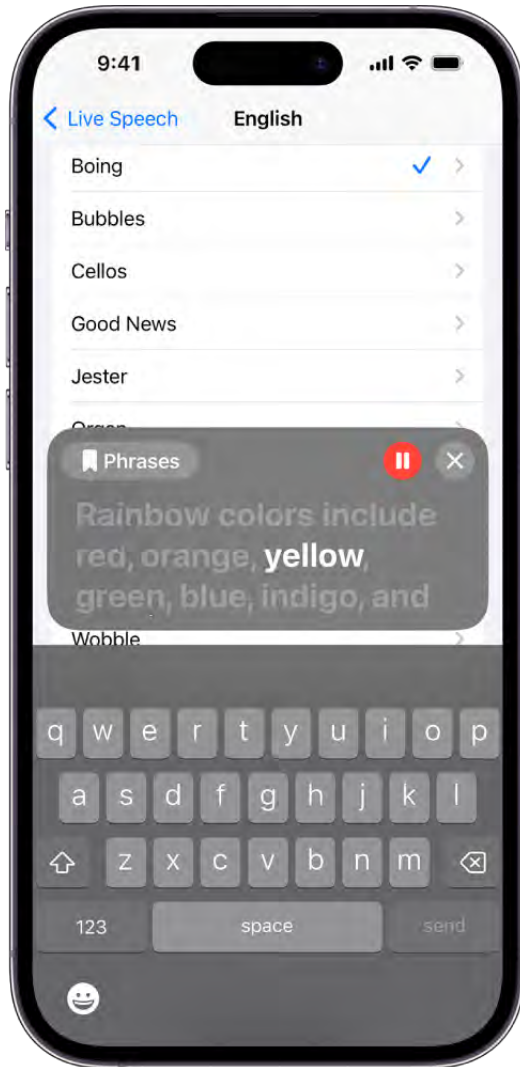
DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL



## Hearing

You can adjust audio for noisier contexts or turn speech into text. You can also change how iPhone alerts you. And you can interact with Siri in text only.

Learn more about [hearing-related accessibility features](#)



## Speech

You can communicate with family, friends, and colleagues in the way that works best for you, whether you are non-speaking, at risk of speech loss, or someone with a speech disability.

Learn more about [speech-related accessibility features](#)



## Cognitive

You can reduce distraction and sensory stimulus or understand audio and text better by pairing them with one another. You can also get help with everyday tasks and sign-ins or let iPhone type for you. iPhone makes it easier to identify people and places and store what you might forget.

Learn more about [cognitive-related accessibility features](#)

You can also set up Assistive Access, which gives those with cognitive disabilities the option to perform the most common tasks, such as taking photos and communicating with their inner circle of family and friends, while reducing cognitive load and offering more focused choices. See the [Assistive Access User Guide](#). **COMMENT: Link will work when published**

Siri is often the easiest way to start using accessibility features with iPhone.

**Siri:** Say something like: “Turn on VoiceOver” or “Turn off VoiceOver.” [Learn how to use Siri.](#)

You can also use [Control Center](#) or [Accessibility Shortcut](#) to turn on accessibility features quickly.

## Turn on accessibility features to set up your iPhone

iPhone has accessibility features that you can turn on the first time you turn on your iPhone, to make it easier to set up and personalize other iPhone features.

---

### Hear what’s onscreen with VoiceOver

VoiceOver—a gesture-based screen reader—tells you what’s happening onscreen.

1. After iPhone has turned on, triple-click the side button (on an iPhone with Face ID) or triple-click the Home button (on other iPhone models) to [turn on VoiceOver](#).
2. Do any of the following and more:
  - *Speak the entire screen:* Swipe up with two fingers.
  - *Find out what you’re touching:* Touch the screen or drag your finger over it. VoiceOver speaks the name of the item your finger is on, including icons and text. Swipe right to elect the next item. Tap with four fingers near the top to select the first item on the screen.
  - *Select an item:* Tap to select a button or link, and activate it by double-tapping.
  - *Scroll to another page:* Swipe with three fingers.
  - *Open the onscreen rotor:* Turn two fingers on the screen, as if rotating a dial. See [Control VoiceOver using the rotor on iPhone](#).

*Note:* When VoiceOver is on, basic gestures don’t work as usual. See [Use VoiceOver gestures on iPhone](#) and [Operate iPhone when VoiceOver is on](#).

You can adjust audio options, language, voice, speaking rate, how much detail VoiceOver provides, and more in [VoiceOver settings](#).

---



## Zoom in on part of the screen

1. Double-tap the screen with three fingers, then use the slider to set a magnification level.
2. Use three fingers to scroll around the zoomed-in screen.

See [Zoom in on the iPhone screen](#).

---

## Turn on other features during setup

You can turn on additional accessibility features from the Quick Start screen.

Tap  to turn on or adjust settings for any of the following:

- [VoiceOver](#)
- [Zoom](#)
- [Display & Text Size](#)
- [Motion](#)
- [Spoken Content](#)
- Touch (such as [AssistiveTouch](#) and [Touch Accommodations](#), [Switch Control](#), or any [external keyboard](#).)

If you've set up accessibility features on an iPhone or iPad that's nearby, you can transfer your settings to your new iPhone with Quick Start—just follow the onscreen instructions. See [Turn on and set up your iPhone](#). (See [Move from an Android device to iPhone](#) if your previous device wasn't made by Apple.)


---

## Change Siri accessibility settings on iPhone

You can change how quickly or when Siri responds, use text to make requests to Siri, have Siri audibly share notifications, and announce and end calls.


---

## Tell Siri when and how to respond to requests

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Siri.
2. Do any of the following:
  - *Set how long Siri waits for you to finish speaking:* Below Siri Pause Time, choose Default, Longer, or Longest.
  - *Change how fast Siri speaks:* Adjust the slider below Speaking Rate.
  - *Decide when Siri responds aloud or in text:* Choose an option below Spoken Responses.
  - *Use Siri even when iPhone is covered or facing down:* Turn on Always Listen for "Hey Siri."  
  
To have Siri respond when iPhone is facing up, go to Settings > Siri & Search, and turn on Listen for "Siri" or "Hey Siri."

---


## Type instead of speak to Siri

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Siri, then turn on Type to Siri.
2. To make a request, activate Siri, then interact with Siri using the keyboard and text field.

---

## Announce calls and notifications for specific apps

You can have Siri [announce notifications](#) and [calls](#) on your iPhone speaker, supported headphones, when [using CarPlay](#), and on MFi hearing devices.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Siri, then turn on Announce Notifications on Speaker.
2. Tap Announce Notifications, then for each app, choose whether to announce all notifications or only time-sensitive notifications.

---

## End phone and FaceTime calls

You can [have Siri announce and answer calls](#), and then end calls.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Siri, tap Call Hangup, then turn on Call Hangup.

*Note:* Available on iPhone 11, iPhone SE (2nd generation), and later. Requires download of speech models. Not available in all languages.

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

2. To end a call, say something like:

**Siri:** “Hang up”

(Participants on the call will hear you.)

See also [Route and automatically answer calls on iPhone](#).


---

## Quickly open features with Accessibility Shortcut on iPhone


When you add features to Accessibility Shortcut, just triple-click a physical button and tap to quickly open the feature you want.

---

### Add features to Accessibility Shortcut

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Accessibility Shortcut, then tap to select the features you use the most.

*Note:* To add some features—like [Guided Access](#) or [Assistive Access](#)—to Accessibility Shortcut, you must first turn them on.

2. To rearrange the order they appear, drag  to move a feature up or down.
- 

### Open Accessibility Shortcut

1. Triple-click one of the following:
    - The side button (on an iPhone with Face ID)
    - The Home button (on other iPhone models)
  2. Tap the feature you want to turn on or off.
  3. To slow down the double-click or triple-click speed, see [Adjust settings for the side or Home button on iPhone](#).
- 

When Assistive Access is on, Accessibility Shortcut can't be opened. To open it while Guided Access is on, you must first turn on Accessibility Shortcut when you [set up Guided Access](#).


DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

You can also add Accessibility Shortcut to [Control Center](#), then reach your shortcuts with an onscreen swipe instead of triple-clicking a physical button. (Magnifier, Text Size, Guided Access, and Hearing can be added directly to Control Center.)

**Tip:** Many accessibility features can be turned on and off with [Siri](#). [Learn how to use Siri.](#)

# Vision

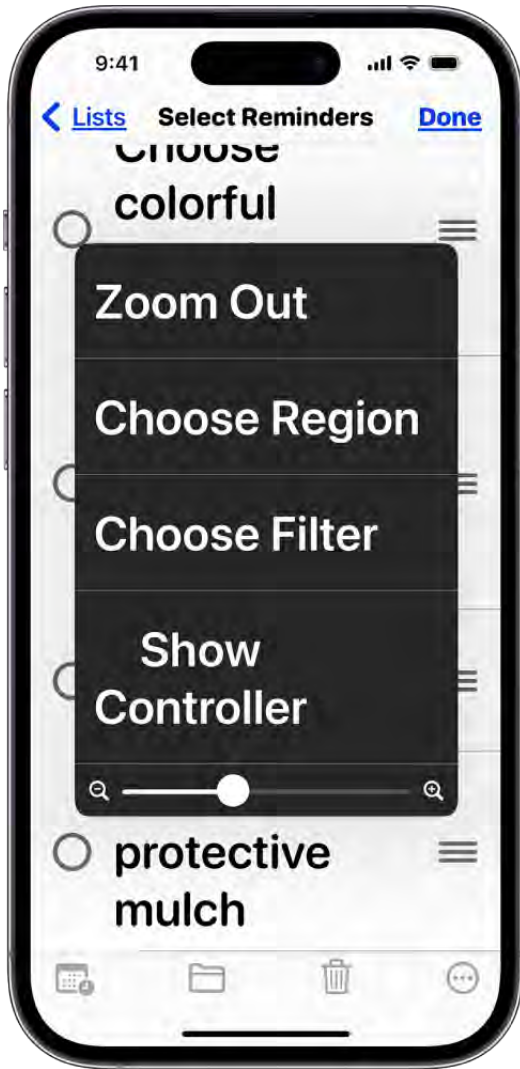
## Set up vision-related accessibility features on iPhone

In the Accessibility pane of Settings , you can customize options to best suit your vision needs. You can change screen colors and text size, zoom in, use VoiceOver to hear the content of your screen read aloud to you, and more.

Action	Related features and settings
Change colors	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Change colors</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Dark Mode</a></li> </ul>
Read text more easily	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Zoom</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Legibility</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Magnifier</a></li> </ul>
Make onscreen items easier to see	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Change colors</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Make items bigger</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Onscreen Motion</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Pointer</a></li> </ul>
Hear what's onscreen	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Audio descriptions</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Spoken content</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">VoiceOver</a></li> </ul>
Use braille	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Braille display</a></li> </ul>
Speak to get things done	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Dictate text</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Siri</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Shortcuts</a></li> </ul>


## Zoom in on the iPhone screen

In many apps, you can zoom in or out on specific items. For example, you can double-tap or pinch to look closer in Photos or expand webpage columns in Safari. You can also use the Zoom feature to magnify the screen no matter what you're doing. You can magnify the entire screen (Full Screen Zoom) or magnify only part of the screen with a resizable lens (Window Zoom). And, you can use Zoom together with VoiceOver.



---

## Set up Zoom

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Zoom, then turn on Zoom.
  2. Adjust any of the following:
    - *Follow Focus*: Track your selections, the text insertion point, and your typing.
    - *Smart Typing*: Switch to Window Zoom when a keyboard appears.
    - *Keyboard Shortcuts*: Control Zoom using shortcuts on an external keyboard.
    - *Zoom Controller*: Turn the controller on, set controller actions, and adjust the color and opacity.
    - *Zoom Region*: Choose Full Screen Zoom or Window Zoom.
    - *Zoom Filter*: Choose None, Inverted, Grayscale, Grayscale Inverted, or Low Light.
    - *Maximum Zoom Level*: Drag the slider to adjust the level.
  3. If you use iPhone with a pointer device, you can also set the following below Pointer Control:
    - *Zoom Pan*: Choose Continuous, Centered, or Edges to set how the screen image moves with the pointer.
    - *Adjust Size with Zoom*: Allow the pointer to scale with zoom.
  4. To add Zoom to Accessibility Shortcut, go to Settings > Accessibility > Accessibility Shortcut, then tap Zoom.
-

## Use Zoom

1. Double-tap the screen with three fingers or [use Accessibility Shortcut](#) to turn on Zoom.
2. To see more of the screen, do any of the following:
  - *Adjust the magnification:* Double-tap the screen with three fingers (without lifting your fingers after the second tap), then drag up or down. Or triple-tap with three fingers, then drag the Zoom Level slider.
  - *Move the Zoom lens:* (Window Zoom) Drag the handle at the bottom of the Zoom lens.
  - *Pan to another area:* (Full Screen Zoom) Drag the screen with three fingers.
3. To adjust the settings with the Zoom menu, triple-tap with three fingers, then adjust any of the following:
  - *Choose Region:* Choose Full Screen Zoom or Window Zoom.
  - *Resize Lens:* (Window Zoom) Tap Resize Lens, then drag any of the round handles that appear.
  - *Choose Filter:* Choose Inverted, Grayscale, Grayscale Inverted, or Low Light.
  - *Show Controller:* Show the Zoom Controller.
4. To use the Zoom Controller, do any of the following:
  - *Show the Zoom menu:* Tap the controller.
  - *Zoom in or out:* Double-tap the controller.
  - *Pan:* When zoomed in, drag the controller.

While using Zoom with Magic Keyboard, the Zoom region follows the insertion point, keeping it in the center of the screen. See [Pair Magic Keyboard with iPhone](#).

To turn off Zoom, double-tap the screen with three fingers or [use Accessibility Shortcut](#).

---

## Change color on iPhone to make it easier to see items onscreen

To make it easier to see what's on your iPhone screen, you can invert and filter colors or make transparent items solid.




**Tip:** Quickly set brightness with the slider in [Control Center](#).


---

## Invert colors

You can invert colors on the iPhone screen to make it easier to read text. This can be especially useful in apps and websites that don't support [Dark Mode](#).

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Display & Text Size.
  2. Turn on one of the following:
    - *Smart Invert:* Reverse colors everywhere except images.
    - *Classic Invert:* Reverse all the colors onscreen.
- 

## Filter colors to adjust hues

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Display & Text Size.
2. Tap Color Filters, turn on Color Filters, then tap a color filter to apply it.

You can drag any slider that appears to adjust the intensity or hue. The pencils reflect how the filter affects a range of colors.

*Note:* Color filters can change the look of images and videos.


Turn on Reduce White Point to tone down the intensity of bright colors.

To have screen colors become warmer as it gets dark out, use [Night Shift](#). Night Shift automatically removes inverted colors and color filter effects (except grayscale).

---

## Make transparent items solid


Some backgrounds appear transparent or blurred by default. You can reduce the transparency of these areas and simplify parts of your screen by making these transparent areas opaque by giving them a solid color.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Display & Text Size.
  2. Turn on Reduce Transparency.
- 

## Differentiate without color


Some screen items rely on color to convey information. You can replace these with alternative ways to tell them apart, like shapes or text.

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL


1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Display & Text Size.
  2. Turn on Differentiate Without Color.
- 

### Use ones and zeros for on/off switches

Switches turn green when they are on. You can also have switches use “1” to indicate when they’re on and “0” to indicate when they’re off.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Display & Text Size.
  2. Turn on On/Off Labels.
- 

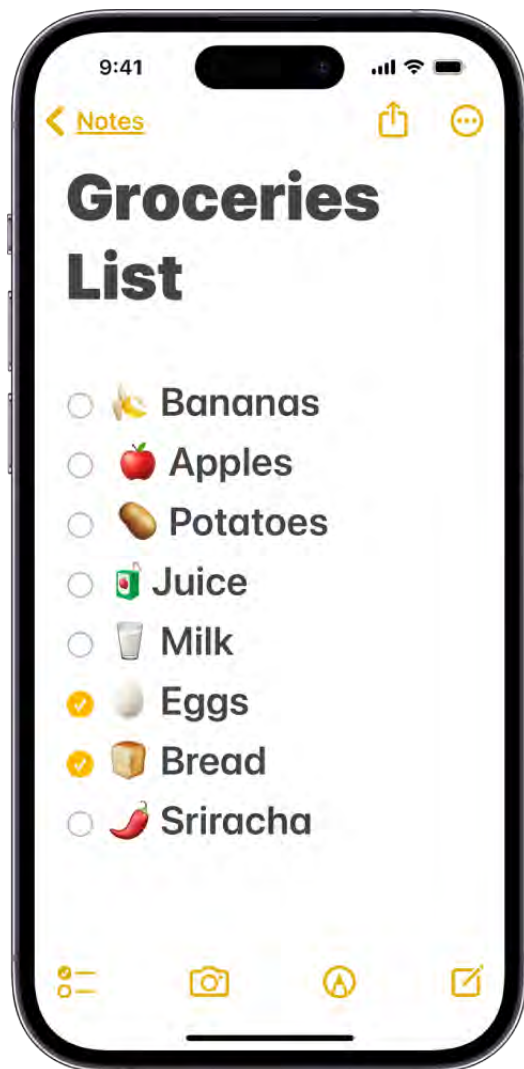
To apply these settings to only the contents of the zoom window, see [Zoom in on the iPhone screen](#).

You can also use Magnifier  to change the colors you see in your environment. See [Change Magnifier settings on iPhone](#).

## Make text more legible on iPhone

You can change the weight, size, and darkness to make it easier to read text on your iPhone screen. You can also underline text you can tap.


**Tip:** Quickly set text size when you add it to [Control Center](#).



---

## Make text easier to read

You can adjust your preferred text weight, size, and darkness in apps that support Dynamic Type, such as Settings, Calendar, Contacts, Mail, Messages, and Notes.


1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Display & Text Size.
2. Do any of following:
  - *Make text bigger:* Tap Larger Text, then drag the slider to adjust the text size (turn on Larger Accessibility Sizes to show more size options).

You can also go to Settings > Display & Brightness > Display Zoom, then select Larger Text to see larger controls.

- *Make text heavier:* Turn on Bold Text.

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL



- *Make text darker:* Turn on Increase Contrast to improve legibility by making the text stand out more.
- *Identify tappable text:* Turn on Button Shapes to underline any text that performs an action when you tap it.

You can also enlarge text on your screen by using [Zoom](#) or in your environment with [Magnifier](#) .

---

### Adjust the text size while you're using an app

1. Open Control Center, then tap **AA**.

(If you don't see **AA**, add it to Control Center—go to Settings  > Control Center, then tap  next to Text Size.)

2. Drag the slider up or down to increase or decrease the text size.

To change the text size for all apps, tap All Apps at the bottom of the screen.

---


To apply these settings to only the contents of the zoom window, see [Zoom in on the iPhone screen](#).

If you're using a mouse or other device with an onscreen pointer and have trouble finding the pointer on the screen, you can make it bigger. See [Make the pointer easier to see when using a mouse or trackpad with iPhone](#).

## Stop or reduce onscreen motion on iPhone

If you don't want visual motion on your iPhone screen, you can stop or reduce the movement of some screen elements, such as:

- Parallax effect of wallpaper, apps, and alerts
- Screen transitions
- Siri animations
- Typing autocompletion
- Animated full-screen and bubble effects in the Messages app
- Animated images on the Web and in apps

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Motion.
2. These settings stop or reduce motion:
  - *Reduce Motion*: Turn on. (When off, more items in the user interface animate, such as the parallax effect of icons.)
  - *Auto-Play Message Effects*: Turn off. (When on, the Messages app automatically plays full-screen effects. If you turn this setting off, you can still manually play effects by tapping Replay below the message bubble.)
  - *Auto-Play Video Previews*: Turn off. (When on, it allows apps such as the App Store to automatically play video previews.)
  - *Auto-Play Animated Images*: Turn off. (When on, rapid animated images and moving elements such as GIFs in Messages and Safari play automatically.)
  - *Dim Flashing Lights*: Turn on. (The display of media automatically dims when flashes or strobe effects are detected.)
  - *Limit Frame Rate*: Turn on. (On models with ProMotion display technology, this limits the maximum frame rate of the display to 60 frames per second.)

To apply these effects to specific apps, see [Customize visual accessibility settings for specific apps on iPhone](#).

**Important:** Your iPhone uses an on-device algorithm to detect flashing or strobing lights included in supported video content and automatically dims them on your iPhone in real time. Motion settings should not be relied upon in circumstances where you could be harmed or injured, in high-risk situations, or for the treatment of any medical condition.

## Customize visual accessibility settings for specific apps on iPhone

You can choose different color, text size, and motion settings for certain apps, the Home Screen, and Settings.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Per-App Settings.


2. Tap Add App, then choose an app, Home Screen, or Settings.
  3. Tap the app, Home Screen, or Settings, then adjust the settings.
- 

## Hear iPhone speak the screen, selected text, and typing feedback

Even if VoiceOver is turned off, you can have iPhone speak selected text or the entire screen. iPhone can also provide feedback and speak text corrections and suggestions as you type.

---


### Choose modes for Spoken Content

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Spoken Content.
2. Turn on any of the following:
  - *Speak Selection*: To select what you want spoken.
  - *Speak Screen*: To have iPhone read everything on screen.
  - *Speech Controller*: For quick access to Speak Screen and Speak on Touch when Speak Screen is on.
  - *Highlight Content*: To move a cursor over words or sentences as you listen.
  - *Typing Feedback*: To have iPhone speak each character, entire words, auto-corrections, auto-capitalizations, and typing predictions.

(To hear typing predictions, you also need to go to Settings > General > Keyboard, then turn on Predictive.)

---

### Change how Spoken Content sounds

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Spoken Content.
  2. Adjust any of the following:
    - *Voices*: Choose a voice and dialect.
    - *Speaking Rate*: Drag the slider.
    - *Pronunciations*: Dictate or spell out how you want certain phrases to be spoken.
-

## Hear iPhone speak

**Siri:** Say something like: "Speak screen." [Learn how to use Siri.](#)


Or do any of the following:

- *Hear selected text:* Select the text, then tap Speak.
  - *Hear the entire screen:* Swipe down with two fingers from the top of the screen. Use the controls that appear to pause speaking or adjust the rate.
  - *Hear typing feedback:* Start typing. To hear typing predictions (when turned on), touch and hold each word.
- 

## Hear audio descriptions for video content on iPhone

If you can't see your screen and your content includes audio descriptions, you can listen to an audio description—a separate audio track that narrates or describes the visual content of a clip, show, or movie.

---

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Audio Descriptions.
  2. Turn on Audio Descriptions.
- 

If you don't see audio descriptions, see the Apple Support article [Turn on audio descriptions on your iPhone or iPad.](#)

If you're a content creator and want to add audio descriptions to a file, see [Add descriptive audio tracks](#) in the Compressor User Guide.

---

# Use VoiceOver

## Turn on and practice VoiceOver on iPhone

With VoiceOver—a gesture-based screen reader—you can use iPhone even if you can't see the screen. VoiceOver gives audible descriptions of what's on your screen—from battery level, to who's calling, to which app your finger is on. You can also adjust the speaking rate and pitch to suit your needs.

When you touch the screen or drag your finger over it, VoiceOver speaks the name of the item your finger is on, including icons and text. To interact with the item, such as a button or link, or to navigate to another item, [use VoiceOver gestures](#).



When you go to a new screen, VoiceOver plays a sound, then selects and speaks the name of the first item on the screen (typically in the top-left corner). VoiceOver tells you when the screen changes to landscape or portrait orientation, when the screen becomes dimmed or locked, and what's active on the Lock Screen when you wake iPhone.

---

## Turn VoiceOver on or off

**Important:** VoiceOver changes the gestures you use to control iPhone. When VoiceOver is on, you must use VoiceOver gestures to operate iPhone.

To turn VoiceOver on or off, do any of the following:

- Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver, then turn the setting on or off.
- Use [Control Center](#) if you've added it there.
-  Use [Accessibility Shortcut](#) if you've set it up.

**Siri:** Say something like: "Turn on VoiceOver" or "Turn off VoiceOver." [Learn how to use Siri](#).

Siri knows when VoiceOver is on and often reads more information back to you than appears on the screen. You can also use VoiceOver to read what Siri shows on the screen.


---

## Learn and practice VoiceOver gestures

You can practice VoiceOver gestures in a special area without affecting iPhone or its settings. When you practice a gesture, VoiceOver describes the gesture and the resulting action.



Try different techniques to discover which works best for you. If a gesture doesn't work, try a quicker movement, especially for a double tap or swipe gesture. To swipe, try brushing the screen quickly with your finger or fingers. For best results using multifinger gestures, touch the screen with some space between your fingers.


1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver.
  2. Turn on VoiceOver, tap VoiceOver Practice, then double-tap to start.
  3. Practice the following gestures with one, two, three, and four fingers:
    - Tap
    - Double tap
    - Triple tap
    - Swipe left, right, up, or down
  4. When you finish practicing, tap Done, then double-tap to exit.
- 

## Change your VoiceOver settings on iPhone


You can customize the settings for VoiceOver, such as the audio options, language, voice, speaking rate, and verbosity.

---

### Adjust the VoiceOver volume and other audio options

- To increase or decrease the volume, press the volume buttons on iPhone.
  - To set other audio options, go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Audio, then set options such as the following:
    - *Sounds & Haptics*: Adjust and preview sound effects and haptics.
    - *Audio Ducking*: Temporarily reduce media playback volume when VoiceOver speaks.
    - *Auto-select Speaker in Call*: Automatically switch to the speaker during a call when you're not holding iPhone to your ear.
    - *Send to HDMI*: Route audio to externally connected devices, such as an instrument amplifier or a DJ mixer.
-



## Set the VoiceOver language

- *Change the primary language:* VoiceOver uses the same language you choose for your iPhone. To choose a different primary language, go to Settings  > General > Language & Region, then tap Add Language.
- *Switch languages using the rotor:* See [Control VoiceOver using the rotor on iPhone](#).
- *Automatically detect languages:* VoiceOver can switch voices for text in different languages. Go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Speech, then turn on Detect Languages.

---

## Adjust the speaking voice

Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver, then do any of the following:

- *Adjust the speaking rate:* Drag the Speaking Rate slider.
- *Choose a voice:* Tap Speech > Voice, then choose a voice. To download an enhanced voice, tap .
- *Adjust the pitch:* Tap Speech, then drag the slider. You can also turn on Pitch Change to have VoiceOver use a higher pitch when speaking the first item of a group (such as a list or table) and a lower pitch when speaking the last item of a group.
- *Specify the pronunciation of certain words:* Tap Speech > Pronunciations, tap , enter a phrase, then dictate or spell out how you want the phrase to be pronounced.

*Note:* You can dictate only if you turned on Enable Dictation in Settings > General > Keyboards.

---

## Set how much VoiceOver tells you

Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver, then tap any of the following:

- *Verbosity:* Choose options to have VoiceOver speak hints, punctuation, uppercase letters, embedded links, and more. VoiceOver can even confirm rotor actions and tell you when the flashlight is turned on.


To change how VoiceOver speaks punctuation, tap Punctuation, then choose a group. You can also create new groups—for example, a programming group in which "[" is spoken as "left brack."

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

- *Always Speak Notifications:* VoiceOver reads notifications, including incoming text messages as they occur, even if iPhone is locked. Unacknowledged notifications are repeated when you unlock iPhone.
- 

### Customize VoiceOver settings for an activity

You can customize a group of VoiceOver settings for an activity, such as programming. Apply the settings automatically when you open certain apps or by adjusting the rotor.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Activities.
  2. Choose an existing activity or tap Add Activity.
  3. Adjust settings for speech, audio, verbosity, and braille.
  4. Choose Apps or Context to automatically apply the settings for this activity.
- 

### Use flat or grouped navigation

Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Navigation Style, then choose one of the following:

- *Flat:* VoiceOver moves sequentially through each item on the screen when you use the move next and previous commands.
  - *Grouped:* VoiceOver moves through items and groups of items on the screen. To move into a group, use a two-finger swipe right. To move out of a group, use a two-finger swipe left.
- 

### Adjust VoiceOver visuals

Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver, then turn on any of the following:

- *Large Cursor:* If you have difficulty seeing the outline around the selected item, you can enlarge and thicken the outline.
  - *Caption Panel:* The text spoken by VoiceOver is displayed at the bottom of the screen.
- 

### Use Quick Settings to adjust VoiceOver from anywhere on iPhone

When VoiceOver is turned on, you can access Quick Settings by doing a two-finger quadruple tap.

To customize Quick Settings, do the following:

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Quick Settings.

2. Choose the settings you want, or drag  to reorder settings.
- 

## Use VoiceOver gestures on iPhone

When VoiceOver is on, standard touchscreen gestures have different effects, and additional gestures let you move around the screen and control individual items.

VoiceOver gestures include two-, three-, and four-finger taps and swipes.

You can use different techniques to perform VoiceOver gestures. For example, you can perform a two-finger tap using two fingers on one hand, one finger on each hand, or your thumbs. Instead of selecting an item and double-tapping, you can use a split-tap gesture—touch and hold an item with one finger, then tap the screen with another finger.

---

### **Explore and speak items on the screen**

To explore the screen, drag your finger over it. VoiceOver speaks the name of each item you touch.

You can also use VoiceOver gestures to explore the screen in order, from top to bottom and left to right.

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

Action	Gesture
Select and speak an item	Tap or touch the item
Select the next item	Swipe right
Select the previous item	Swipe left
Move into a group of items	Two-finger swipe right
Move out of a group of items	Two-finger swipe left
Select the first item on the screen	Four-finger tap near the top of the screen
Select the last item on the screen	Four-finger tap near the bottom of the screen
Speak the entire screen from the top	Two-finger swipe up
Speak the entire screen from the selected item	Two-finger swipe down
Pause or continue speaking	Two-finger tap
Speak additional information, such as the position within a list or whether text is selected	Three-finger tap

For more information about navigation styles, see [Use flat or grouped navigation](#).

### Scroll up, down, left, and right

Use VoiceOver gestures to move to another page.

Action	Gesture
Scroll up one page	Three-finger swipe down
Scroll down one page	Three-finger swipe up
Scroll left one page	Three-finger swipe right
Scroll right one page	Three-finger swipe left

### Take action on an item

Use VoiceOver gestures to perform actions on an item.

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

Action	Gesture
Select an item	Tap
Activate the selected item	Double tap
Double-tap the selected item	Triple tap
Drag a slider	Tap the slider to select it, then swipe up or down with one finger; or double-tap and hold the slider until you hear three rising tones, then drag the slider
Start or stop the current action (for example, play or pause music or a video, take a photo in Camera, start or stop a recording, start or stop the stopwatch)	Two-finger double tap
Dismiss an alert or return to the previous screen	Two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a "z")
Edit an item's label to make it easier to find	Two-finger double tap and hold

**Tip:** As an alternative to selecting an item and double-tapping to activate it, touch and hold an item with one finger, then tap the screen with another.

### Use gestures to control VoiceOver

Use these gestures to control VoiceOver.

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

Action	Gesture
Mute or unmute VoiceOver	Three-finger double tap. If both VoiceOver and Zoom are turned on, use the three-finger triple-tap gesture.
Turn the screen curtain on or off (When the screen curtain is on, the screen contents are active even though the display is black and appears to be turned off.)	Three-finger triple tap. If both VoiceOver and Zoom are turned on, use the three-finger quadruple-tap gesture.
Use a standard gesture	Double-tap and hold your finger on the screen until you hear three rising tones, then make the gesture. When you lift your finger, VoiceOver gestures resume.  For example, to drag a volume slider with your finger instead of swiping up and down, select the slider, double-tap and hold, wait for the three tones, then slide left or right.
Open the Item Chooser	Two-finger triple tap.  To move quickly through the list of items, type a name in the search field, swipe right or left to move through the list alphabetically, or tap the table index to the right of the list and swipe up or down. You can also <a href="#">use handwriting</a> to select an item by writing its name.  To dismiss the Item Chooser without making a selection, do a two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a "z").
Open the VoiceOver quick settings	Two-finger quadruple tap.

## Use the VoiceOver rotor

You can use the onscreen rotor to change VoiceOver settings, jump from one item to the next on the screen, select special input methods such as Braille Screen Input or Handwriting, and more. See [Control VoiceOver using the rotor on iPhone](#).

You can use these gestures with the rotor.

Action	Gesture
Choose a rotor setting	Two-finger rotation
Move to the previous item or increase (depending on the rotor setting)	Swipe up
Move to the next item or decrease (depending on the rotor setting)	Swipe down

## Operate iPhone when VoiceOver is on

When VoiceOver is on, you need to use special gestures to unlock iPhone, go to the Home Screen, open Control Center, switch apps, and more.

### Unlock iPhone

- *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Wake iPhone and glance at it, then drag up from the bottom edge of the screen until you feel a vibration or hear two rising tones.
- *On an iPhone with Touch ID:* Press the Home button using the finger you registered with Touch ID.

If prompted, enter your passcode. To avoid having your passcode spoken as you enter it, [enter your passcode silently using handwriting mode](#) or [type onscreen braille](#).

### Go to the Home Screen

- *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Drag one finger up from the bottom edge of the screen until you feel a vibration or hear two rising tones, then lift your finger.
- *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Press the Home button.

### Switch to another app

Swipe right or left with four fingers to cycle through the open apps.

Alternatively, you can use the App Switcher.

1. To open the App Switcher, do one of the following:
  - *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Drag one finger up from the bottom edge of the screen until you feel the second vibration or hear three tones, then lift your finger.



DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

- *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Double-click the Home button.
2. To browse the open apps, swipe left or right until the app you want is selected.
  3. Double-tap to open the app.
- 

### Open Control Center

- *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Drag one finger down from the top edge of the screen until you feel a vibration or hear the second tone.
- *On all iPhone models:* Tap any item in the status bar, then swipe up with three fingers. Or touch and hold the bottom of the screen until you hear a tone, then swipe up.

To dismiss Control Center, do a two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a "z").

---

### View notifications

- *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Drag one finger down from the top edge of the screen until you feel the second vibration or hear the third tone.

To dismiss the notifications screen, do a two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a "z").

- *On all iPhone models:* Tap any item in the status bar, then swipe down with three fingers. Or touch and hold the top of the screen until you hear a tone, then swipe down.

To dismiss the notifications screen, do a two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a "z").

---

### Speak status bar information

1. Tap the status bar at the top of the screen.
  2. Swipe left or right to hear the time, battery state, Wi-Fi signal strength, and more.
- 

### Rearrange apps on your Home Screen

Do one of the following:

- *Drag and drop:* Tap an icon on the Home Screen, then double-tap and hold your finger on the screen until you hear three rising tones. The item's relative location is described as you drag. Lift your finger when the icon is in its new location. Drag an icon to the edge of the screen to move it to another Home Screen.

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

- *Move actions:* Tap an app, then swipe down to hear available actions. When you hear “Edit Mode,” double-tap to start arranging apps. Find the app you want to move, then swipe down to the Move action and double-tap. Move the VoiceOver cursor to the new destination for the app, then choose from the available actions: Cancel Move, Create New Folder, Add to Folder, Move Before, or Move After.

When you’re finished, tap Done, then double-tap.

---

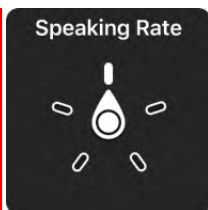
## Search from the Home Screen

1. Tap anywhere on the Home Screen outside the status bar.
2. Swipe down with three fingers.

---

## Control VoiceOver using the rotor on iPhone

You can use the onscreen VoiceOver rotor to change how VoiceOver works. You can adjust the VoiceOver volume or speaking rate, move from one item to the next on the screen, select special input methods such as Braille Screen Input or Handwriting, and more.



When you [use Magic Keyboard to control VoiceOver](#), use the rotor to adjust settings such as volume, speech rate, use of pitch or phonetics, typing echo, and reading of punctuation.

---

## Use the VoiceOver rotor

1. When VoiceOver is turned on, rotate two fingers on your screen as if you're turning a dial. If you prefer to use one finger on each hand, simultaneously drag up with one finger and drag down with the other.



VoiceOver speaks the rotor setting. Keep rotating your fingers to hear more settings. Stop rotating your fingers when you hear the setting you want.

2. Swipe your finger up or down on the screen to use the setting.

The available rotor settings and their effects depend on what you're doing. For example, if you choose Headings when you're browsing a webpage, swipe down or up to move the VoiceOver cursor to the next or previous heading.

---

## Customize the VoiceOver rotor

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver.
2. Do any of the following:
  - *Add or reorder the rotor settings:* Tap Rotor, then choose the settings you want, or drag  to reorder settings.
  - *Add another language:* Tap Speech > Add New Language (below Rotor Languages), then choose a language.
  - *Have VoiceOver confirm rotor actions:* Tap Verbosity, then turn on Speak Confirmation.

---

## Use the onscreen keyboard with VoiceOver on iPhone

VoiceOver changes how you use the onscreen keyboard when you activate an editable text field. You can enter, select, and delete text; change the keyboard language; and more.

---

## Enter text with the onscreen keyboard

1. Select a text field, then double-tap.

The insertion point and the onscreen keyboard appear.

2. To enter text, do one of the following:
  - *Standard typing:* Select a key by swiping left or right on the keyboard, then double-tap to enter the character. Or move your finger around the keyboard to select a key and, while continuing to touch the key with one finger, tap the screen with another finger. VoiceOver speaks the key when it's selected, and again when the character is entered.
  - *Touch typing:* Touch a key on the keyboard to select it, then lift your finger to enter the character. If you touch the wrong key, slide your finger to the key you want. VoiceOver speaks the character for each key as you touch it, but doesn't enter a character until you lift your finger.
  - *Direct Touch typing:* VoiceOver is disabled for the keyboard only, so you can type just as you do when VoiceOver is off.
  - *Dictation:* Use a two-finger double tap on the keyboard to start and stop dictation.

To enter an accented character, do any of the following:

- *Standard typing:* Select the plain character, then double-tap and hold until you hear a tone indicating alternate characters have appeared. Drag left or right to select and hear the choices. Release your finger to enter the current selection.
- *Touch typing:* Touch and hold a character until the alternate characters appear.

---

## Edit text with the onscreen keyboard



- *Move the insertion point:* Swipe up or down to move the insertion point forward or backward in the text. Use the rotor to choose whether you want to move the insertion point by character, by word, or by line. To jump to the beginning or end, double-tap the text.

VoiceOver makes a sound when the insertion point moves, and speaks the character, word, or line that the insertion point moves across. When moving forward by words, the insertion point is placed at the end of each word, before the space or punctuation that follows. When moving backward, the insertion point is placed at the end of the preceding word, before the space or punctuation that follows it.


DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

- *Move the insertion point past the punctuation at the end of a word or sentence:* Use the rotor to switch back to character mode.

When moving the insertion point by line, VoiceOver speaks each line as you move across it. When moving forward, the insertion point is placed at the beginning of the next line (except when you reach the last line of a paragraph, when the insertion point is moved to the end of the line just spoken). When moving backward, the insertion point is placed at the beginning of the line that's spoken.

- *Delete a character:* Use .
  - *Select text:* Do any of the following:
    - Set the rotor to Text Selection, swipe up or down to choose Character, Word, Line, or Sentence, then swipe left or right to move backward or forward. (You may need to enable Text Selection—go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Rotor.)
    - Set the rotor to Edit, swipe up or down to choose Select or Select All, then double-tap. If you choose Select, the word closest to the insertion point is selected when you double-tap. To increase or decrease the selection, do a two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a "z") to dismiss the pop-up menu, then pinch.
  - *Cut, copy, or paste:* Set the rotor to Edit, select the text, swipe up or down to choose Cut, Copy, or Paste, then double-tap.
  - *Fix misspelled words:* Set the rotor to Misspelled Words, then swipe up or down to jump to the previous or next misspelled word. Swipe left or right to choose a suggested replacement, then double-tap to use the replacement.
  - *Undo:* Shake iPhone, swipe left or right to choose the action to undo, then double-tap.
-

## Change the keyboard settings

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver.
  2. Tap any of the following:
    - *Typing Style*: You can choose a new style. Or, set the rotor to Typing Mode, then swipe up or down.
    - *Phonetic Feedback*: Speak text character by character. VoiceOver first speaks the character, then its phonetic equivalent—for example, “f” and then “foxtrot.”
    - *Typing Feedback*: Choose to speak characters, words, both, or nothing.
    - *Rotor*: Select the settings you want to include in the rotor.
    - *Speech*: Tap Add New Language (below Rotor Languages), then choose a language.
    - *Verbosity*: Tap Deleting Text. To have VoiceOver speak deleted characters in a lower pitch, tap Change Pitch.
- 


## Write with your finger in VoiceOver on iPhone

With handwriting mode in VoiceOver, you can enter text by writing characters on the screen with your finger. In addition to typing or dictation, use handwriting mode to enter your iPhone passcode silently or to open apps from the Home Screen.

---

## Use handwriting mode

1. Set the rotor to Handwriting.

If Handwriting isn't in the rotor, go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Rotor, then add it.

2. To choose a character type (lowercase, numbers, uppercase, or punctuation), swipe up or down with three fingers.

To hear the selected character type, tap with three fingers.

3. Trace a character on the screen with your finger.

You can also do any of the following:

- *Enter an alternate character (a character with an accent, for example):* Write the character, then swipe up or down with two fingers until you hear the character you want.
  - *Enter a space:* Swipe right with two fingers.
  - *Go to a new line:* Swipe right with three fingers.
  - *Delete the previous character:* Swipe left with two fingers.
4. To exit handwriting mode, do a two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a "z"), or set the rotor to a different setting.

---

## Enter your passcode silently with handwriting mode

1. On the passcode screen, set the rotor to Handwriting.
2. Write the characters of your passcode with your finger.

---

## Select an item on the Home Screen

1. On the Home Screen, set the rotor to Handwriting.
2. Start writing the name of the item with your finger.

If there are multiple matches, continue to spell the name until it's unique, or swipe up or down with two fingers to choose from the current matches.

---

## Quickly navigate a long list

1. Select the index to the right of the list (for example, next to your Contacts list or in the VoiceOver Item Chooser).
  2. Set the rotor to Handwriting, then use your finger to write the letter you want to navigate to.
- 

## Use VoiceOver on iPhone with an Apple external keyboard


If you [use Magic Keyboard](#) with iPhone, you can use keyboard shortcuts to activate VoiceOver commands.

Additionally, you can use VoiceOver Help to learn the keyboard layout and the actions associated with various key combinations. VoiceOver Help speaks keys and keyboard commands as you type them, without performing the associated action.

---

## Choose the VoiceOver modifier

The modifier is a key or set of keys you press with one or more other keys to enter VoiceOver commands. You can set the modifier to be the Caps Lock key or the Control and Option keys pressed at the same time.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Typing > Modifier Keys.
2. Choose the modifier for VoiceOver commands: the Caps Lock key or the Control and Option keys.

**|** This modifier is abbreviated as "VO" below.

---

## VoiceOver keyboard commands

**|** You can control VoiceOver using key combinations.

**|** (VO = modifier keys)

Action	Shortcut
Turn on VoiceOver Help	VO-K
Turn off VoiceOver Help	Esc (Escape)
Select the next or previous item	VO-Right Arrow or VO-Left Arrow
Activate the selected item	VO-Space bar



DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

Touch and hold the selected item	VO-Shift-M
Read from the current position	VO-A
Read from the top	VO-B
Pause or resume reading	Control
Copy the last spoken text to the clipboard	VO-Shift-C
Search for text	VO-F
Mute or unmute VoiceOver	VO-S
Go to the Home Screen	VO-H
Move to the status bar	VO-M
Open the notifications screen	Move to the status bar (VO-M), then Option-Up Arrow
Open Control Center	Move to the status bar (VO-M), then Option-Down Arrow
Open Search	Option-Up Arrow
Open the App Switcher	VO-H-H
Open the Item Chooser	VO-I
Change the label of the selected item	VO-/
Start, stop, or pause an action	VO-Hyphen
Swipe up or down	VO-Up Arrow or VO-Down Arrow
Turn the rotor left or right	VO-Command-Left Arrow or VO-Command-Right Arrow
Adjust the setting specified by the rotor	VO-Command-Up Arrow or VO-Command-Down Arrow
Turn the screen curtain on or off	VO-Shift-F11
Return to the previous screen	Esc

## Quick Nav using the arrow keys

Turn on Quick Nav to control VoiceOver using the arrow keys.

Action	Shortcut
Turn Quick Nav on or off	Left Arrow-Right Arrow
Select the next or previous item	Right Arrow or Left Arrow
Select the next or previous item specified by the rotor	Up Arrow or Down Arrow
Select the first or last item	Control-Up Arrow or Control-Down Arrow
Tap an item	Up Arrow-Down Arrow
Scroll up, down, left, or right	Option-Up Arrow, Option-Down Arrow, Option-Left Arrow, or Option-Right Arrow
Adjust the rotor	Up Arrow-Left Arrow or Up Arrow-Right Arrow

## Single-key Quick Nav for web browsing

To navigate a webpage quickly, turn on Quick Nav (VO-Q), then press keys on the keyboard to navigate to specific item types, such as headings or links. To move to the previous item, hold the Shift key as you press a key for the item type.

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

Item type	Shortcut
Heading	H
Link	L
Text field	R
Button	B
Form control	C
Image	I
Table	T
Static text	S
ARIA landmark	W
List	X
Item of the same type	M
Level 1 heading	1
Level 2 heading	2
Level 3 heading	3
Level 4 heading	4
Level 5 heading	5
Level 6 heading	6

## Text editing

Use these commands (with Quick Nav turned off) to work with text. VoiceOver reads the text as you move the insertion point.

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

Action	Shortcut
Go forward or back one character	Right Arrow or Left Arrow
Go forward or back one word	Option-Right Arrow or Option-Left Arrow
Go up or down one line	Up Arrow or Down Arrow
Go to the beginning or end of the line	Command-Left Arrow or Command-Down Arrow
Go to the beginning or end of the paragraph	Option-Up Arrow or Option-Down Arrow
Go to the previous or next paragraph	Option-Up Arrow or Option-Down Arrow
Go to the top or bottom of the text field	Command-Up Arrow or Command-Down Arrow
Select text as you move	Shift + any of the insertion point movement commands above
Select all text	Command-A
Copy, cut, or paste the selected text	Command-C, Command-X, or Command-V
Undo or redo last change	Command-Z or Shift-Command-Z


## Use a braille display with VoiceOver on iPhone

iPhone supports many international braille tables and refreshable braille displays. You can connect a Bluetooth® wireless braille display to read VoiceOver output, including contracted and uncontracted braille, and equations using Nemeth Code. When you edit text, the braille display shows the text in context, and your edits are automatically converted between braille and printed text. You can also use a braille display with input keys to control your iPhone when VoiceOver is turned on.

For a list of supported braille displays, see the Apple Support article [Braille displays supported by iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch](#).

---

## Connect a braille display and learn commands to control iPhone

1. Turn on the braille display.
2. On iPhone, go to Settings  > Bluetooth, turn on Bluetooth, then choose the display.
3. On iPhone, go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Braille, then choose the display.
4. To see the braille commands for controlling iPhone, tap More Info, then tap Braille Commands.

See the Apple Support article [Common braille commands for VoiceOver on your iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch](#).


---

## Change the braille display settings

1. On iPhone, go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Braille.
2. Set any of the following:

Setting	Description
Output	Set the braille display output to uncontracted six-dot, uncontracted eight-dot, or contracted braille.
Input	Choose the input method for entering braille on the display—uncontracted six-dot, uncontracted eight-dot, or contracted braille. You can also turn on Automatic Translation.
Braille Screen Input	Choose the input method for entering braille using the screen. See <a href="#">Type braille directly on the iPhone screen with VoiceOver</a> .
Braille Tables	Add tables to the Braille Table rotor.
Status Cells	Turn on the general and text status cells and choose their location.
Equations use Nemeth Code	Turn on Nemeth Code for mathematical equations.
Show On-screen Keyboard	Display the keyboard on the screen.
Turn Pages when Panning	Automatically turn pages when panning.
Word Wrap	Wrap words to the next line.
Braille Alert Messages	When turned on, your braille display shows an alert message for the specified duration.
Ignore Chord Duration	Adjust the amount of time required before subsequent key presses are recognized as braille chords.
Auto Advance Duration	Adjust this setting to your preferred reading speed.

## Output closed captions in braille during media playback

1. On iPhone, go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Verbosity.
  2. Choose Braille or Speech and Braille.
- 


## Type braille directly on the iPhone screen with VoiceOver

If you turn on Braille Screen Input in VoiceOver, you can use your fingers to enter six-dot or contracted braille directly on the iPhone screen, without a physical braille keyboard.

---

## Enter braille on the screen

1. Set the rotor to Braille Screen Input.

If you don't see Braille Screen Input in the rotor, go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Rotor, then select it from the list.

2. Place iPhone in one of the following positions:
  - *Tabletop mode*: Lay iPhone flat in front of you.
  - *Screen away mode*: Hold iPhone with the screen facing away so your fingers curl back to tap the screen.
3. Enter braille characters by tapping the screen with one or more fingers at the same time.

**Tip:** To have iPhone read dots aloud, tap and hold the dots, then when you hear the timer tones and announcement, release the dots.

To move the entry dots to match your natural finger positions, tap and lift your right three fingers all at once to position dots 4, 5, and 6, followed immediately by your left three fingers for dots 1, 2, and 3.


You can also use gestures to perform actions such as the following:

Action	Gesture
Enter a space	Swipe right with one finger; in screen away mode, swipe to <i>your</i> right
Delete the previous character	Swipe left with one finger
Move to a new line	Swipe right with two fingers
Cycle through spelling suggestions	Swipe up or down with one finger
Enter a carriage return, or send a message (in Messages)	Swipe up with three fingers
Cycle through the braille modes	Swipe left or right with three fingers
Translate immediately (when contractions are turned on)	Swipe down with two fingers
Switch to the next keyboard	Swipe up with two fingers

- To exit Braille Screen Input, do a two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a "z"), or adjust the rotor to another setting.

---


### Change Braille Screen Input settings

- Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Braille > Braille Screen Input.
  - Do any of the following:
    - Set six-dot or contracted braille as the default.
    - Reverse the dot positions for six-dot braille.
  - To view or edit the commands and gestures you can perform when Braille Screen Input is turned on, go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Commands > Braille Screen Input.
- 

### Customize VoiceOver gestures and keyboard shortcuts on iPhone

You can customize the gestures and keyboard shortcuts that activate VoiceOver commands.




- 
1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Commands.
  2. Tap any of the following:
    - *All Commands*: Navigate to the command you want to customize, then tap Edit, Add Gesture, or Add Keyboard Shortcut.
    - *Touch Gestures*: List the gestures and the associated commands.
    - *Handwriting*: List the gestures for handwriting and the associated commands.
    - *Braille Screen Input*: List the gestures for Braille Screen Input and the associated commands.
- 

To clear your custom gestures and keyboard shortcuts, tap Reset VoiceOver Commands.



## Use VoiceOver on iPhone with a pointer device

If you use a pointer device with iPhone, you can adjust how it works with VoiceOver.

---

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver.
  2. Below Pointer Control, tap any of the following:
    - *Pointer*: Set the pointer to ignore, follow, or move the VoiceOver cursor.
    - *Speak Under Pointer*: You can adjust the delay to speak the item under the pointer.
- 

## Use VoiceOver for images and videos on iPhone

You can use the Camera  and Photos  apps with VoiceOver, even if you can't see the screen. VoiceOver can provide image descriptions.

---

### Take photos and videos in Camera


When you use Camera, VoiceOver describes objects in the viewfinder.

To take a photo or start, pause, or resume a video recording, double-tap the screen with two fingers.

---

## Explore images

When you use the Image Explorer, VoiceOver tells you about people, objects, text, and tables within images. You can navigate receipts and nutrition labels in logical order, or move your finger over a photo to discover a person's position relative to other objects.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > VoiceOver Recognition, then turn on Image Descriptions.
2. In an app such as Photos or Safari, select an image.
3. Swipe up to hear more options, then double-tap when you hear "Explore image features."
4. Move your finger around on the image to find out the position of each object.

You can [add custom descriptions](#) to your images with Markup.



*Note:* Not available in all languages. See [Image Descriptions for VoiceOver](#).

---

## Trim videos in Photos



1. Select the video you want to trim, then double-tap.
  2. Select Edit, then double-tap.
  3. Select Start or End (on the media scrubber), then swipe up or down to adjust the start or end time.
  4. When you're finished, select Done, then double-tap.
- 

## Use VoiceOver in apps on iPhone

You can use VoiceOver to interact with apps, even if you can't see the screen. VoiceOver is supported in the built-in Apple apps that came with your iPhone—such as Safari , Maps , and more. With VoiceOver Recognition, you can get descriptions of images and screen elements even on webpages and in apps without accessibility information.

---


## Browse the web in Safari

- *Search the web:* Select the address field, double-tap to show the keyboard, then enter a search term, phrase, or URL. Double-tap Go, or select a search suggestion, then double-tap.
- *Skip to the next element on a webpage:* Set the rotor to the element type—such as headings, links, and form controls—then swipe up or down.
- *Set the rotor settings for web browsing:* Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Rotor. Select or deselect items, or drag  up or down to reposition an item.
- *Skip images while navigating:* Go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Navigate Images. You can choose to skip all images or only those without descriptions.
- *Reduce page clutter for easier reading and navigation:* In the Safari address field, select the Format Options button, double-tap, select Show Reader View (not available for all webpages), then double-tap.

**Tip:** If you [use Magic Keyboard](#) with iPhone, you can [use single-key Quick Nav for web browsing](#).



---

## Navigate in Maps

- *Control how the map tracks your current location:* Select , then double-tap until you hear the tracking option you want.
  - *Tracking on:* The map automatically centers on your current location.
  - *Tracking on with heading:* The map automatically centers on your current location and rotates so that the heading you're facing is at the top of the screen. In this mode, iPhone speaks street names and points of interest as you approach them.
  - *Tracking off:* The map doesn't automatically center on your current location.
- *Explore the map:* Drag your finger around the screen, or swipe left or right to move to another item.
- *Zoom in or out:* Select the map, set the rotor to Zoom, then swipe up or down with one finger.
- *Pan the map:* Swipe with three fingers.
- *Browse points of interest shown on the map:* Set the rotor to Points of Interest, then swipe up or down with one finger.
- *Follow a road:* Hold your finger down on the road, wait until you hear "pause to follow," then move your finger along the road.
- *Get information about a location:* Select the location (for example, a business, landmark, or pin), then double-tap to open the information card. Swipe left or right to hear information such as directions, street address, phone number, business hours, and customer reviews.
- *Get guidance to the starting point:* When you start walking directions in Maps, iPhone guides you in the direction of the starting point using sound and haptic feedback.

---

## Read PDF documents

In the Books  and Files  apps, you can use VoiceOver to read PDF documents. VoiceOver even describes detailed information—such as forms, tables, and lists.

---

## Make and receive phone calls


In the Phone  app, you can use VoiceOver to make and receive calls.



- *Answer or end a call:* Double-tap the screen with two fingers.

When a phone call is established with VoiceOver on, the screen displays the numeric keypad by default, instead of showing call options.


- *Display call options:* Select the Hide button in the lower-right corner, then double-tap.
  - *Display the numeric keypad again:* Select the Keypad button near the center of the screen, then double-tap.
- 

### Trim voice memo recordings

In the Voice Memos  app, you can use VoiceOver to edit recordings.

1. Select the recording you want to trim, then double-tap.
  2. Select , then double-tap.
  3. Select Edit Recording, then double-tap.
  4. Select , then double-tap.
  5. In the Waveform Overview, select Trim Beginning or Trim End, then swipe up or down to adjust the start or end time.
  6. Select Trim, then double-tap.
  7. Select Save, then double-tap.
  8. Select Done, then double-tap.
- 

### Hear data in Weather maps

Some maps in the Weather  app are encoded to allow you to hear the data as a changing tone or pitch. For example, as intensity of weather condition changes in a visual animation on screen, you can have these described using variations in sound.

1. With [VoiceOver turned on](#), open the Weather app.
2. Open a location page with a precipitation, wind, or air quality map.
3. Double-tap and hold the map until you hear a tone or the words "Weather Map Snapshot." If you hear spoken instructions, follow them.

As you run your finger or pointer over a sonified map, the pitch shifts to represent the changing values.

---

## Read math equations

VoiceOver can read math equations on the web (encoded using MathML) and in supported Apple apps such as Numbers and Keynote.


- *Hear an equation:* Have VoiceOver read the text as usual. VoiceOver says “math” before it starts reading an equation.
- *Explore the equation:* Double-tap the selected equation to display it in full screen and move through it one element at a time. Swipe left or right to read elements of the equation. Use the rotor to select Symbols, Small Expressions, Medium Expressions, or Large Expressions, then swipe up or down to hear the next element of that size. You can continue to double-tap the selected element to “drill down” into the equation to focus on the selected element, then swipe left or right, or up or down, to read one part at a time.

Equations spoken by VoiceOver can also be output to a braille device using Nemeth Code, as well as the codes used by Unified English Braille, British English, French, and Greek. See [Use a braille display with VoiceOver on iPhone](#).

---


## Use VoiceOver Recognition on the web or in apps without accessibility information

**Important:** VoiceOver Recognition should not be relied upon in circumstances where you could be harmed or injured, in high-risk situations, for navigation, or for the diagnosis or treatment of any medical condition.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > VoiceOver Recognition.
2. Turn on any of the following:
  - *Image Descriptions:* Get descriptions of images in apps and on the web.
  - *Screen Recognition:* Get descriptions of screen elements in apps.
  - *Text Recognition:* Get descriptions of text found in images.
3. Tap Feedback Style, then choose Speak, Play Sound, or Do Nothing.

# Mobility

## Set up mobility-related accessibility features on iPhone

In the Accessibility pane of Settings , you can customize options to best suit your mobility needs. You can use your voice to navigate your iPhone, adapt the touchscreen for specific gestures, adjust how the screen responds to your touch, and more.

Action	Related features and settings
Navigate your iPhone hands-free	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Voice Control</li> <li>Siri</li> <li>Shortcuts</li> <li>Call audio routing</li> </ul>
Let iPhone type for you	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Dictation</li> <li>Predictive text</li> </ul>
Connect other inputs	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Switch Control</li> <li>Keyboards</li> <li>Bluetooth accessories</li> <li>Head tracking</li> </ul>
Control other devices	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Apple Watch Mirroring</li> <li>Apple TV remote</li> <li>Platform Switching</li> </ul>
Customize gestures	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>AssistiveTouch</li> <li>Back tap</li> <li>Reachability</li> <li>AirPods</li> <li>Pointer scrolling speed</li> <li>Side or Home button</li> <li>Face ID and attention</li> </ul>
Adjust the sensitivity of your input	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Slow Keys and Sticky Keys</li> <li>Siri Pause Time</li> <li>Touch accommodations</li> </ul>
Turn off vibration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Vibration</li> </ul>

## Use AssistiveTouch on iPhone

AssistiveTouch helps you use iPhone if you have difficulty touching the screen or pressing the buttons. You can use AssistiveTouch without any accessory to perform actions or gestures that are difficult for you. You can also use a compatible adaptive accessory (such as a joystick) together with AssistiveTouch to control iPhone.



With AssistiveTouch, you can use a simple tap (or the equivalent on your accessory) to perform actions such as the following:

- Open the AssistiveTouch menu
- Go to the Home Screen
- Double-tap
- Perform multifinger gestures






- Perform scroll gestures
- Activate Siri
- Access Control Center, notifications, the Lock Screen, or the App Switcher
- Adjust the volume on iPhone
- Shake iPhone
- Take a screenshot
- Use 3D Touch (on supported iPhone models)
- Use Apple Pay
- Use Emergency SOS
- Speak screen
- Adjust dwell settings
- Restart iPhone

---

## Set up AssistiveTouch

**Siri:** Say something like: “Turn on AssistiveTouch” or “Turn off AssistiveTouch.” [Learn how to use Siri.](#)

Or do the following:

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Touch > AssistiveTouch.
2. Turn on AssistiveTouch.
3. To customize AssistiveTouch, tap any of the following:
  - *Customize Top Level Menu:* Tap an icon to change its action. Tap  or  to change the number of icons in the menu. The menu can have up to eight icons.
  - *Single-Tap, Double-Tap, Long Press, or 3D Touch:* Assign custom actions that run when you interact with the menu button. 3D Touch is available only on supported iPhone models.
  - *Create New Gesture:* Add your favorite gestures.

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL


- *Idle Opacity*: Adjust the visibility of the menu button when not in use.
- *Confirm with AssistiveTouch*: On an iPhone with Face ID, confirm payments with Face ID by using AssistiveTouch instead of double-clicking the side button.

**Tip:** To turn AssistiveTouch on or off quickly, you can [set up Accessibility Shortcut](#), then triple-click a button.

---

## Add a pointer device

You can connect Bluetooth® and USB assistive pointer devices, such as trackpads, joysticks, and mouse devices.


1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Touch > AssistiveTouch.
2. Turn on AssistiveTouch.
3. Below Pointer Devices, tap any of the following:
  - *Devices*: Pair or unpair devices and customize buttons.
  - *Mouse Keys*: Allow the AssistiveTouch pointer to be controlled using the keyboard number pad.
  - *Pointer Style*: Adjust the size, color, and auto-hide settings.
  - *Show Onscreen Keyboard*: Display the onscreen keyboard.
  - *Always Show Menu*: Show the AssistiveTouch menu when a pointer device is connected.
  - *Tracking speed*: Drag the slider to adjust the speed.
  - *Drag Lock*: Turn on to enable dragging.
  - *Zoom Pan*: Choose Continuous, Centered, or Edges.

When you use a mouse or trackpad, you can also [change the pointer appearance](#).



---

## Set up Dwell Control

iPhone performs a selected action when you hold the cursor still on a screen element or an area of the screen.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Touch > AssistiveTouch, then turn on Dwell Control.
2. Adjust any of the following:

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

- *Fallback Action*: Turn on to revert the dwell action to the selected fallback action after performing an operation.
- *Movement Tolerance*: Adjust the distance the cursor can move while dwelling on an item.
- *Hot Corners*: Perform a selected action—such as take a screenshot, open Control Center, activate Siri, scroll, or use a shortcut—when the cursor dwells in a corner of the screen.
- *Time needed to initiate a dwell action*: Tap  or .

---

## Use AssistiveTouch

Tap the menu button, then choose an action or gesture.

For a multifinger gesture, do the following:

- *Pinch and Rotate*: Tap Custom, then tap Pinch and Rotate. When the two pinch circles appear, touch anywhere on the screen to move the pinch circles, then drag them in or out to perform a pinch or rotate gesture. When you finish, tap the menu button.
- *Multifinger swipe or drag*: Tap Device > More > Gestures, then tap the number of digits needed for the gesture. When the circles appear on the screen, swipe or drag in the direction required by the gesture. When you finish, tap the menu button.


To return to the previous menu, tap the arrow in the center of the menu. To exit the menu without performing a gesture, tap anywhere outside the menu.

To move the AssistiveTouch menu button, drag it to a new location on the screen.

---

## Create custom gestures

You can add your favorite gestures (such as touch and hold or two-finger rotation) to the AssistiveTouch menu. You can even create several gestures with, for example, different degrees of rotation.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Touch > AssistiveTouch > Create New Gesture.
2. Perform your gesture on the recording screen. For example:
  - *Touch-and-hold gesture*: Touch and hold your finger in one spot until the recording progress bar reaches halfway, then lift your finger. Be careful not to move your finger while recording, or the gesture will be recorded as a drag.

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

- *Two-finger rotation gesture*: Rotate two fingers on the iPhone screen around a point between them. (You can do this with a single finger or stylus—just create each arc separately, one after the other.)

If you record a sequence of taps or drag gestures, they're all played back at the same time. For example, using one finger or a stylus to record four separate, sequential taps at four locations on the screen creates a simultaneous four-finger tap.

3. If your gesture doesn't turn out quite right, tap Cancel, then try again.
4. When you're satisfied with your gesture, tap Save, then name the gesture.

To use your custom gesture, tap the AssistiveTouch menu button, tap Custom, then choose the gesture. When the blue circles representing your gesture appear, drag them to where you want to use the gesture, then release.






---



## Adjust how iPhone responds to your touch

If you have difficulties with hand tremors, dexterity, or fine motor control, you can adjust how the iPhone touchscreen responds to tap, swipe, and touch-and-hold gestures. You can have iPhone recognize faster or slower touches and ignore multiple touches. You can also prevent iPhone from waking when you touch the screen, or turn off Shake to Undo if you unintentionally shake iPhone.

---

## Adjust settings for taps, swipes, and multiple touches


1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Touch > Touch Accommodations, then turn on Touch Accommodations.
2. You can configure iPhone to do any of the following:
  - *Respond to touches of a certain duration:* Turn on Hold Duration, then tap  or  to adjust the duration. (The default is 0.10 seconds.)
  - *Prevent unintended swipe gestures:* To increase the amount of movement required before a swipe gesture begins, tap Swipe Gestures, turn on Swipe Gestures, then adjust required movement.
  - *Treat multiple touches as a single touch:* Turn on Ignore Repeat, then tap  or  to adjust the amount of time allowed between multiple touches.
  - *Respond to the first or last place you touch:* Choose Use Initial Touch Location or Use Final Touch Location.

If you choose Use Initial Touch Location, iPhone uses the location of your first tap—when you tap an app on the Home Screen, for example. If you choose Use Final Touch Location, iPhone registers the tap where you lift your finger. iPhone responds to a tap when you lift your finger within a certain period of time. Tap  or  to adjust the timing. Your iPhone can respond to other gestures, such as a drag gesture, if you wait longer than the gesture delay.

---


## Adjust settings for touch-and-hold gestures

The touch-and-hold gesture reveals content previews, actions, and contextual menus. If you have trouble performing this gesture, do the following:

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Touch, then tap Haptic Touch or 3D & Haptic Touch.
2. Choose the touch duration—Fast or Slow.
3. On an iPhone with 3D Touch, you can also choose the pressure needed—Light, Medium, or Firm.
4. Test your new settings on the image at the bottom of the screen.


---

## Turn off Tap to Wake

On a supported iPhone model, you can prevent touches on the screen from waking iPhone. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Touch, then turn off Tap to Wake.

---

## Turn off Shake to Undo

If you tend to unintentionally shake iPhone, you can turn off Shake to Undo. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Touch.


**Tip:** To undo text edits, swipe left with three fingers.

---

## Tap the back of iPhone to perform actions or shortcuts

You can double-tap or triple-tap the back of iPhone to perform actions such as taking a screenshot, turning on an accessibility feature, running a shortcut, and more.

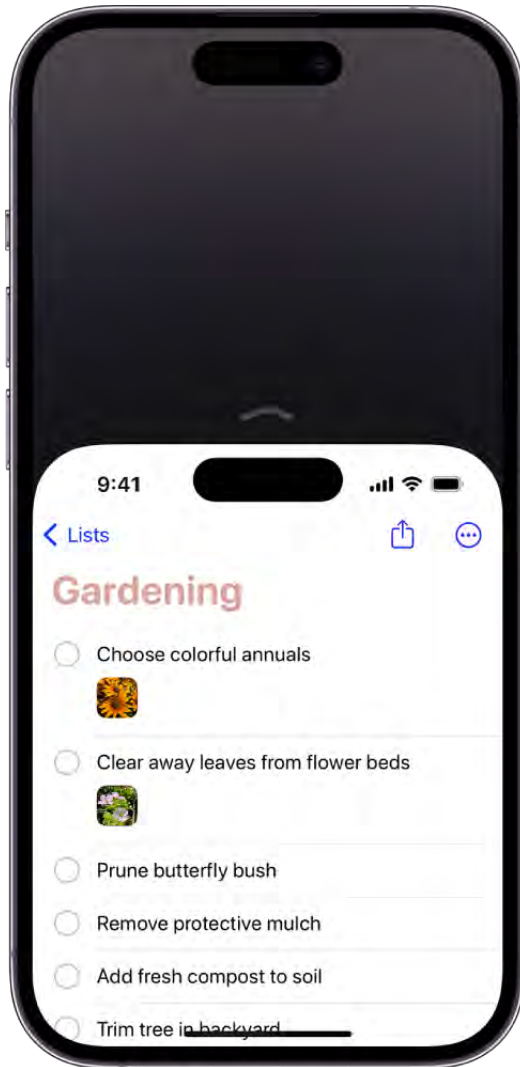
---


1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Touch > Back Tap.
  2. Choose Double Tap or Triple Tap, then choose an action.
  3. To perform the action you set, double-tap or triple-tap the back of iPhone.
- 

To turn off Back tap, go to Settings > Accessibility > Touch > Back Tap, choose Double Tap or Triple Tap, then tap None.

## Reach the top of the iPhone screen with one hand




When you use iPhone with one hand in Portrait orientation, you can use Reachability to lower the top half of the screen so it's within easy reach of your thumb.



- 
1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Touch, then turn on Reachability.
  2. To lower the top half of the screen, do one the following:
    - *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Swipe down on the bottom edge of the screen.
    - *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Lightly double-tap the Home button.
  3. To return to the full screen, tap the upper half of the screen.
- 

## Route and automatically answer calls on iPhone


You can automatically direct the audio of phone or FaceTime calls to the iPhone speaker, a Bluetooth® headset, or your hearing device. iPhone can also automatically answer calls after a length of time you set.

- 
1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Touch > Call Audio Routing, then choose an audio destination.
  2. Tap Auto-Answer Calls, turn on Auto-Answer Calls, then set the duration of time before the call is answered by tapping  or .
- 

During a call, you can switch the audio routing from your hearing aid to the iPhone speaker by removing the hearing aid from your ear.

## Turn off vibration on iPhone

If you don't want your iPhone to vibrate, you can turn vibration off for specific uses or all alerts.

- 
- *Set vibration options for specific alerts:* Go to Settings  > Sounds & Haptics. See [Change iPhone sounds and vibrations](#).
  - *Turn off all vibrations:* Go to Settings > Accessibility > Touch, then turn off Vibration.

*Note:* This setting turns off vibrations for earthquake, tsunami, and other emergency alerts.

---


## Change Face ID and attention settings on iPhone

On an iPhone with Face ID, you can adjust Face ID and attention settings if you have physical or vision limitations.

---

### Set up Face ID with Accessibility Options

Setting up Face ID usually requires you to gently move your head in a circle to show all the angles of your face. If you can't perform the full range of head motion, you can still set up Face ID without moving your head.

1. Go to Settings  > Face ID & Passcode.
2. Position your face within the frame, then tap Accessibility Options.

Face ID is still secure but requires more consistency when you unlock iPhone.




---

## Change attention settings

For additional security, Face ID is *attention-aware*. It unlocks iPhone only when your eyes are open and looking at the screen. iPhone can also reveal notifications and messages, keep the screen lit when you're reading, or lower the volume of alerts.

If you don't want iPhone to check for your attention, do the following:

1. Go to Settings  > Face ID & Passcode.
2. Turn on or off any of the following:
  - Require Attention for Face ID
  - Attention Aware Features

These settings are turned off by default if you turn on VoiceOver when you first set up iPhone.

*Note:* Requiring attention makes Face ID more secure.

---

## Use Voice Control to interact with iPhone


You can control iPhone with just your voice. Speak commands to perform gestures, interact with screen elements, dictate and edit text, and more.


*Note:* Voice Control is available for supported languages. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).

---

### Set up Voice Control

Before you turn on Voice Control for the first time, make sure iPhone is connected to the internet over a Wi-Fi network. After iPhone completes a one-time file download from Apple, you don't need an internet connection to use Voice Control.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Voice Control.
2. Tap Set Up Voice Control, then tap Continue to start the file download.

When the download is complete,  appears in the status bar to indicate that Voice Control is turned on.

3. Set options such as the following:

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

- *Language*: Set the language and download languages for offline use.
  - *Customize Commands*: View the available commands and create new commands.
  - *Vocabulary*: Teach Voice Control new words.
  - *Show Confirmation*: When Voice Control recognizes a command, a visual confirmation appears at the top of the screen.
  - *Play Sound*: When Voice Control recognizes a command, an audible sound is played.
  - *Show Hints*: See command suggestions and hints.
  - *Overlay*: Display numbers, names, or a grid over screen elements.
  - *Attention Aware*: On an iPhone with Face ID, Voice Control wakes up when you look at your iPhone and goes to sleep when you look away.
- 

### Turn Voice Control on or off

After you set up Voice Control, you can turn it on or off quickly by doing any of the following:

- Use [Control Center](#) if you've added it there.
- Use [Accessibility Shortcut](#) if you've set it up.

**Siri**: Say something like: "Turn on Voice Control" or "Turn off Voice Control." [Learn how to use Siri.](#)


---

### Learn Voice Control commands

When Voice Control is turned on, you can say commands such as the following:

- "Open Control Center"
- "Go home"
- "Tap *item name*"
- "Open *app name*"
- "Take screenshot"
- "Turn up volume"

To learn more Voice Control commands, say “Show me what to say” or “Show commands.” You can also use an onscreen tutorial called Voice Control Guide.


1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Voice Control.
2. Tap Open Voice Control Guide, then follow the onscreen instructions.

---

### Label onscreen items with a screen overlay

For faster interactions, you can navigate iPhone with a screen overlay that shows item names, numbers, or a grid.

- *Item names:* Say “Show names” or “Show names continuously,” then say “Tap [item name].”
- *Numbers:* Say “Show numbers” or “Show numbers continuously,” then say the number next to the item you want. You can also give a command to perform a gesture, such as “Tap [number],” “Long press [number],” “Swipe up at [number],” or “Double-tap [number].”
- *Grid:* To interact with a screen location not represented by an item name or number, say “Show grid” or “Show grid continuously,” then do any of the following:
  - *Drill down:* Say a number by itself to show a more detailed grid.
  - *Say a command to interact with an area of the grid:* Say something like, “Tap [number]” or “Zoom in [number].”

**Tip:** To adjust the number of grid rows and columns, go to Settings  > Accessibility > Voice Control > Overlay, then select Numbered Grid. When Voice Control is turned on, you can also say something like, “Show grid with five rows,” or “Show grid continuously with three columns.”

To turn off the overlay, say “Hide names,” “Hide numbers,” or “Hide grid.”

---

### Switch between dictation, spelling, and command modes

When you’re working in a text input area—for example, writing a document, email, or message—you can easily switch between three modes as needed:

- *Dictation mode:* The default—any words you say that aren’t Voice Control commands are entered as text.

If several words phonetically match what you say, they appear onscreen. Tap to choose the one you meant. (Available in select languages.)

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

- *Spelling mode*: When you're in dictation mode and need to spell out a word, say "Spelling mode."

*Note*: Spelling mode is available for English (U.S.) or English (Canada).

- *Command mode*: Voice Control responds only to commands. Other words are ignored and aren't entered as text.

It's especially helpful when you need to use a series of commands and want to prevent what you say from inadvertently being entered in a text input area.

To switch to Command mode, say "Command mode."


To switch back to Dictation mode, say "Dictation mode."

---

## Adjust settings for the side or Home button on iPhone

You can adjust accessibility settings for the side button (on an iPhone with Face ID) or Home button (on other iPhone models).

---

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility, then tap Side Button (on an iPhone with Face ID) or Home Button (on other iPhone models).
  2. Set any of the following:
    - *Click Speed*: Choose the speed required to double-click or triple-click the button—Default, Slow, or Slowest.
    - *Press and Hold to Speak*: Choose whether Siri responds when you press and hold the button.
    - *Rest Finger to Open*: On an iPhone with Touch ID, you can unlock and open iPhone by resting your finger on Touch ID.
- 

On an iPhone with Face ID, you can also [use AssistiveTouch](#) or [use Switch Control](#) to confirm payments with Face ID instead of double-clicking the side button.

## Use buttons on the Apple TV Remote on iPhone

On the Apple TV Remote on iPhone, you can use buttons instead of swipe gestures.

Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Apple TV Remote, then turn on Directional Buttons.

## Make the pointer easier to see when using a mouse or trackpad with iPhone

If you have difficulty seeing or following the pointer when you [use a mouse or trackpad](#) with iPhone, you can change its size and color so it's easier to locate on the screen.

---

Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Pointer Control, then adjust any of the following:

- Increase Contrast
- Automatically Hide Pointer
- Color
- Pointer size
- Scrolling Speed

To customize the buttons of the pointing device, go to Settings > Accessibility > Touch > AssistiveTouch > Devices.

---

## Adjust the onscreen and external keyboard settings on iPhone

You can adjust the onscreen (software) keyboard on iPhone. If you use an external (hardware) keyboard with iPhone, you can customize keyboard shortcuts and change settings such as the key repeat rate.

---

### **Set the onscreen keyboard to display only uppercase letters**

If you have difficulty seeing the onscreen keyboard, you can set it to display only uppercase letters.

Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Keyboards, then turn off Show Lowercase Keys.

---

### **Type on a larger onscreen keyboard**

Rotate iPhone to landscape orientation to use a larger keyboard for typing in many apps, including Mail, Safari, Messages, Notes, and Contacts.


DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

For information about other ways to adjust the onscreen keyboard, see [Type with the onscreen keyboard on iPhone](#) and [Add or change keyboards on iPhone](#).

---

## Control iPhone with an external keyboard

If you have difficulty using the touchscreen, you can control your iPhone using shortcuts on [Magic Keyboard](#) (sold separately).

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Keyboards, tap Full Keyboard Access, then turn on Full Keyboard Access.
2. Control your iPhone using keyboard shortcuts.

Action	Shortcut
Go to the next item	Tab
Go to the previous item	Shift-Tab
Activate the selected item	Space bar
Go to the Home Screen	Command-H
Open the App Switcher	Tab-A
Open Control Center	Tab-C
Open Notification Center	Tab-N
Show Help	Tab-H

3. To customize the keyboard shortcuts, tap Commands.
4. To customize the appearance of the focus, tap any of the following:
  - Auto-Hide
  - Increase Size
  - High Contrast
  - Color

---

## Change how the keys respond on an external keyboard

If you have difficulty using an external keyboard, you can adjust the settings.


Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Keyboards, then tap any of the following:

- *Key Repeat*: You can adjust the repeat interval and delay.
  - *Sticky Keys*: Use Sticky Keys to press and hold modifier keys, such as Command and Option, as you press another key.
  - *Slow Keys*: Use Slow Keys to adjust the time between when a key is pressed and when it's activated.
- 

## Adjust the accessibility settings for AirPods on iPhone

If you have AirPods (3rd generation), AirPods Pro, or AirPods Max, you can adjust the accessibility settings to suit your motor or hearing needs.

---


1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > AirPods.
  2. If you have multiple AirPods, select one.
  3. Set any of the following options:
    - *Press Speed*: Adjust how quickly you must press two or three times before an action occurs.
    - *Press and Hold Duration*: Adjust the duration required to press and hold on your AirPods.
    - *Noise Cancellation with One AirPod*: (AirPods Pro) Turn on noise cancellation even when you're using only one of your AirPods.
    - *Spatial Audio Head Tracking*: When you turn on Follow iPhone, the audio adjusts based on your head movement (for supported audio and video content).
  4. To customize your audio, tap Audio Accessibility Settings.
- 

## Interact with Apple Watch on your iPhone

Apple Watch Mirroring allows you to see and control your Apple Watch screen from your paired iPhone. You can use touch or assistive features like Voice Control, Switch Control, and more on your iPhone to interact with Apple Watch. (Apple Watch Mirroring is available on Apple Watch Series 6 and later.)

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL


To turn on Apple Watch Mirroring, do any of the following:

- Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Apple Watch Mirroring.
- You can triple-click a button if you set up [Accessibility Shortcut](#).

To turn off Apple Watch Mirroring, tap .


## Control a nearby Apple device with iPhone

You can remotely control your other Apple devices with your iPhone.

- 
1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Control Nearby Devices, then tap Control Nearby Devices.

The device you want to control must be signed in with the same Apple ID and connected to the same Wi-Fi network as your iPhone.

2. Choose the device you want to control, then tap a button.

Button names correspond to the controls on your device. Tap  to see your options, including media play controls.

---

**Tip:** To quickly turn on Control Nearby Devices, add this feature to [Accessibility Shortcut](#).

To stop controlling the other device, tap .



---

# Switch Control

## Intro to Switch Control on iPhone

Switch Control is an assistive technology for anyone with limited mobility. It enables you to interact with iPhone by activating a *switch*, such as pressing an external adaptive button, performing a head movement, or making a voiced or voiceless sound. Using one or more switches, you can navigate a cursor around the iPhone screen, then open the Scanner menu to choose an available action such as tap, zoom in, zoom out, and more.

---

### What is a switch?

A switch can be an external hardware device or a feature on your iPhone.

Switches on iPhone don't require any additional hardware. For example:

- *Screen*: Use a tap or long press anywhere on the iPhone screen. You can set up tap and long press as two different switches with separate actions.
- *Camera*: Move your head to the left or right while in view of the front-facing iPhone camera. You can set up left and right movements as two different switches with separate actions.
- *Back Tap*: Double-tap or triple-tap the back of iPhone. You can set up double tap and triple tap as two different switches with separate actions.
- *Sound*: Make simple voiced sounds (such as "Oo") or voiceless sounds (such as a pop). You can set up each sound as a different switch with a separate action.
- *Gaming*: Turn any switch into a virtual game controller to play your favorite games on iPhone.

External switches connect to iPhone through Bluetooth® or the Lightning or USB-C connector. For example:

- Adaptive accessory
- Joystick
- Game controller
- MFi switch or switch interface

## How does Switch Control work?

In Switch Control, each switch performs a specific action—for example, Move To Next Item moves the cursor to the next item on the screen. The switch's action is performed when you activate the switch—such as by pressing the adaptive button, moving your head, or making a sound.

You can use just one switch, or you can use multiple switches for different actions, depending on how you like to work. For example, you can activate your Move to Next Item switch to move the cursor from one item to the next. When the cursor highlights the item you want, you can activate your Select Item switch.

---


## Set up and turn on Switch Control on iPhone

To set up [Switch Control](#), you need to connect and add one or more [switches](#), then assign an action to each switch. You can choose a scanning style and fine-tune other settings to suit your needs. After you turn on Switch Control, you may need to change the assigned actions or readjust the settings. If you have difficulty performing these steps, you can get personalized help at your nearest Apple Store.

---


### Step 1: Connect an external switch (optional)

If you want to use an adaptive accessory, joystick, game controller, or MFi device for Switch Control, you need to first connect it to iPhone by following the manufacturer's instructions. If the switch connects using Bluetooth®, you need to pair it with iPhone.

1. Turn on the switch.
  2. Go to Settings  > Bluetooth, turn on Bluetooth, tap the name of the switch, then follow the onscreen instructions.
- 

### Step 2: Add switches and assign actions

You can use only one switch, or you can use multiple switches to accommodate different actions. Each switch performs an assigned action, such as selecting an item or moving the cursor to the next item.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Switch Control > Switches.
2. Tap Add New Switch, then choose External, Screen, Camera, Back Tap, or Sound.

If you're trying to add an external switch but it isn't shown in the list, make sure it's connected to your iPhone as described above in [Step 1: Connect an external switch \(optional\)](#).

### 3. Assign an action to the switch.


The action for the switch depends on the number of switches you have and the scanning style you choose in [Step 3: Choose a scanning style](#), below. If you don't know which action to assign, choose Select Item, which is compatible with Auto Scanning (the default scanning style). You can return to this setting later to change the assigned action.

**Tip:** Turn your iPhone into a game controller that uses gestures you've already set up, like the same switch (or alternative input method) that you navigate and control your iPhone with. Or you may decide to reuse your [Back Tap](#) gestures instead.

---

## Step 3: Choose a scanning style

By default, the cursor automatically moves from one item to the next after a specified duration. If you prefer to move the cursor manually, you can choose a different scanning style.

Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Switch Control > Scanning Style, then choose one of the following:

- *Auto Scanning:* The cursor automatically moves to the next item after a specified duration. This is the default scanning style.

If you use Auto Scanning with just one switch, make sure the Select Item action is assigned to the switch.

- *Manual Scanning:* When you activate your Move to Next Item switch, the cursor moves to the next item.

Manual Scanning requires at least two switches. Make sure the Move to Next Item action is assigned to one switch, and the Select Item action is assigned to another switch.

- *Single Switch Step Scanning:* When you activate the Move to Next Item switch, the cursor moves to the next item; if no action is taken within a specified duration, the current item is automatically selected.

This scanning style requires only one switch. Make sure the Move to Next Item action is assigned to the switch.

---

#### Step 4: Fine-tune Switch Control settings

You can adjust the behavior of Switch Control in a variety of ways, to suit your specific needs and style. For example, you can change the scanning speed or have iPhone speak the highlighted items.

Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Switch Control, then adjust any of the following:

- *Auto Scanning Time*: Adjust the item scanning speed.
- *Pause on First Item*: Set scanning to pause on the first item in a group.
- *Loops*: Choose how many times to cycle through the screen before hiding Switch Control.
- *Move Repeat*: Set the delay before moving to the previous or next item while a switch is pressed.
- *Long Press*: Set whether a different action occurs when you press and hold a switch, and how long to wait before performing that action.
- *Tap Behavior*: Choose a tap behavior and set the interval for performing a second switch action to show the Scanner menu.
- *Focused Item After Tap*: Choose whether Switch Control resumes scanning at an item you tap or from the beginning.
- *Hold Duration*: Specify how long you need to press and hold a switch before it's accepted as a switch action.
- *Ignore Repeat*: Ignore accidental repeated switch triggers.
- *Sound Effects*: Turn on sound effects.
- *Speech*: Speak items as they're scanned.
- *Menu Items*: Choose the actions shown in the Scanner menu and the order in which they appear.
- *Group Items*: Group items for faster navigation.
- *Large Cursor*: Make the highlight more prominent.

- *Cursor Color*: Choose a different highlight color.
- 

## Step 5: Turn on Switch Control

**Important:** When Switch Control is turned on, you can't use the standard gestures on the touchscreen to exit Switch Control.

Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Switch Control, then turn on Switch Control.

**Tip:** You can add Switch Control to [Accessibility Shortcut](#), then quickly turn it on or off by triple-clicking the side button (on an iPhone with Face ID) or the Home button (on other iPhone models).

---

## Use Switch Control on iPhone to select items, perform actions, and more

After you [set up and turn on Switch Control](#), you can select items on the screen by doing any of the following:

- *Item mode*: The cursor sequentially highlights items or groups of items. This is the default method when you first turn on Switch Control and whenever the Scanner menu appears.
- *Gliding cursor*: You select a point on the screen using scanning crosshairs. This method is useful when you need to select a specific point, such as in Maps, or on a screen with many items.
- *Head tracking*: You can move your head (detected by the front-facing camera) to control the cursor on the screen. This method is useful when you need to select a specific point, such as in Maps, or on a screen with many items.

When the cursor is on the item you want, the Scanner menu opens to show the available actions such as tap, scroll, control the volume, and more.

---

## Use item mode to select items and perform actions

1. Depending on the [scanning style](#) you're using, do one of the following:
  - *If using Auto Scanning:* Watch or listen as groups of items are sequentially highlighted.
  - *If using Manual Scanning:* Activate your Move to Next Item switch to navigate through the groups of items on the screen.
  - *If using Single Switch Step Scanning:* Activate your Move to Next Item switch to navigate through the groups of items on the screen.
2. When the group you want is highlighted, do one of the following:
  - *If using Auto Scanning:* Activate your Select Item switch.
  - *If using Manual Scanning:* Activate your Select Item switch.
  - *If using Single Switch Step Scanning:* Wait until the current group is automatically selected.
3. Repeat steps 1 and 2 to scan and select an item within the group.
4. Repeat steps 1 and 2 to scan and choose an action in the Scanner menu. The dots at the bottom of the menu provide more options.

To dismiss the Scanner menu without choosing an action, activate your Select Item switch when the original item is highlighted and all the icons in the menu are dimmed.

---

## Use the gliding cursor to select a point

By default, Switch Control starts in item mode. To use the gliding cursor instead, do the following:

1. [Use item mode](#) to select any item, then choose Gliding Cursor (in the Scanner menu).
2. To position the vertical crosshair:
  - Activate your Select Item switch when the wide vertical band is over the item you want.
  - Activate your Select Item switch again when the fine vertical line is over the item.
3. Repeat to position the horizontal crosshair.

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

4. In the Scanner menu, select the action you want, then activate your Select Item switch.




To return to item mode, open the Scanner menu, then choose Item Mode.

---

## Set up head tracking

You can move your head to control a cursor on the screen. You can also assign actions to facial expressions, such as a smile or raised eyebrows.

To set up head tracking, do the following:

- Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Switch Control > Switches, then make sure you've [set up switches](#).
- Go to Settings > Accessibility > Switch Control > Head Tracking, turn on Head Tracking, then set any of these options:
  - *Assign actions to facial expressions:* Each expression can perform a different action and require a different degree of expressiveness.
  - *Choose how the pointer tracks your head movement:* Tap Tracking Mode, then choose With Face, When Facing Screen Edges, or Relative to Head.
  - *Adjust the pointer speed:* Tap  or .

---

## Use head tracking

To use head tracking, do the following:

1. [Use item mode](#) to select any item, then choose Head Tracking (in the Scanner menu).
2. Move your head to position the cursor on the location you want, then activate it using your Select Item switch or facial expression.
3. In the Scanner menu, select the action you want, then activate your Select Item switch or facial expression.

To return to item mode, open the Scanner menu, then choose Item Mode.

## Use a switch on other devices with Platform Switching on iPhone

You can remotely control your other Apple devices without adjusting any switch connections. With Platform Switching, you can navigate your iPad, Mac, or Apple TV using the same switch that you use to control your iPhone.

---


1. Connect your devices to the same Wi-Fi network.
  2. Sign in with the same Apple ID on all your devices.
  3. [Set up and turn on Switch Control on iPhone](#), then turn on Switch Control for the others: [iPad](#), [Mac](#), or [Apple TV](#).
  4. [Use the switch](#) to open the Scanner menu.
  5. Choose Device, choose Use Other Device, then choose Connect.
- 

To remove control from your iPhone, choose Devices on the connected device, then choose Disconnect.



# Hearing

## Set up hearing-related accessibility features on iPhone

In the Accessibility pane of Settings , you can customize options to best suit your hearing needs. You can turn on captions, choose visual or vibrating alerts, interact with Siri using the keyboard, and more.

Action	Related features and settings
Turn sound into text	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Sound recognition</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Live Captions (beta)</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">RTT and TTY</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Subtitles and captions</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">HomePod intercom transcriptions</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Audio message</a> transcriptions</li> </ul>
Hear better in different situations	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">MFi hearing devices</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">AirPods</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Live Listen</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Audio settings</a>, including Phone Noise Cancellation and Conversation Boost</li> <li>• <a href="#">Background sounds</a></li> </ul>
Notice your alerts	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">LED flash for alerts</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Vibration</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Siri notifications announcements</a></li> </ul>




## Use hearing devices with iPhone

You can use MFi hearing aids or sound processors with iPhone and adjust their settings.

---

### Pair a hearing device with iPhone

If your hearing devices aren't listed in Settings  > Accessibility > Hearing Devices, you need to pair them with iPhone.

1. Open the battery doors on your hearing devices.
2. On iPhone, go to Settings > Bluetooth, then make sure Bluetooth® is turned on.
3. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Hearing Devices.
4. Close the battery doors on your hearing devices.

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL






5. When their names appear below MFi Hearing Devices (this could take a minute), tap the names and respond to the pairing requests.

Pairing can take as long as 60 seconds—don't try to stream audio or otherwise use the hearing devices until pairing is finished. When pairing is finished, you hear a series of beeps and a tone, and a checkmark appears next to the hearing devices in the Devices list.

You need to pair your devices only once (and your audiologist might do it for you). After that, your hearing devices automatically reconnect to iPhone whenever they turn on.

---

### Adjust the settings and view the status of your hearing devices

- *In Settings:* Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Hearing Devices > MFi Hearing Devices.
- *By triple-clicking a button:* With [Accessibility Shortcut](#) if you've set it up.
- *In Control Center:* Tap . (If you don't see , add it to Control Center—go to Settings  > Control Center, then tap  next to Hearing.)
- *On the Lock Screen:* Go to Settings > Accessibility > Hearing Devices > MFi Hearing Devices, then turn on Control on Lock Screen. From the Lock Screen, you can do the following:
  - Check battery status.
  - Adjust ambient microphone volume and equalization.
  - Choose which hearing device (left, right, or both) receives streaming audio.
  - Control Live Listen.
  - Choose whether call audio and media audio are routed to the hearing device.
  - Choose to play ringtones through the hearing device.

---

### Use your hearing devices with more than one device

If you pair your hearing devices with more than one device (both iPhone and iPad, for example), the connection for your hearing devices automatically switches from one to the other when you do something that generates audio on the other device, or when you receive a phone call on iPhone.


Changes you make to hearing device settings on one device are automatically synced with your other devices.

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

1. Sign in with your Apple ID on all the devices.
  2. Connect all the devices to the same Wi-Fi network.
- 

### Turn on Hearing Aid Compatibility

Hearing Aid Compatibility may reduce interference and improve audio quality with some hearing aid models.






1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Hearing Devices.
2. Turn on Hearing Aid Compatibility.


For iPhone hearing aid compatibility ratings, see the Apple Support article [About Hearing Aid Compatibility \(HAC\) requirements for iPhone](#).

Hearing aid compatibility ratings aren't a guarantee that a particular hearing aid works well with a particular phone. Some hearing aids might work well with phones that do not meet the FCC requirements for hearing aid compatibility. To ensure that a particular hearing aid works well with a particular phone, use them together before purchasing.

---

### Stream audio to your hearing devices

You can stream audio from Phone , Siri , Apple Music , Apple Podcasts , Apple TV , and more.

1. Tap  in Control Center, on the Lock Screen, or in the Now Playing controls for the app you're listening to.
2. Choose your hearing device.

You can also automatically [route audio calls](#) to a hearing device.

---


### Use iPhone as a remote microphone with Live Listen

You can stream sound from the microphone on iPhone to your MFi hearing devices or AirPods. This can help you hear better in some situations—for example, when having a conversation in a noisy environment.


---




1. If you're using AirPods, place them in your ears.

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

If your AirPods don't automatically connect to iPhone, tap  in Control Center or on the Lock Screen, then choose your AirPods.

2. To turn Live Listen on or off, do one of the following:

- Open Control Center, tap , tap your hearing device or AirPods, then tap Live Listen.

(If you don't see , add it to Control Center—go to Settings  > Control Center, then tap  next to Hearing.)

- If you've [set up Accessibility Shortcut](#), triple-click a button, tap Hearing Devices, then tap Live Listen.
- If you're using hearing aids, go to Settings > Accessibility > Hearing Devices, then turn on Live Listen.

3. Position iPhone near the sound source.

---


## Recognize sounds using iPhone

Your iPhone can continuously listen for certain sounds—such as a doorbell, siren, or crying baby—and notify you when it recognizes these sounds.

*Note:* Don't rely on your iPhone to recognize sounds in circumstances where you may be harmed or injured, in high-risk or emergency situations, or for navigation.

---

### Set up Sound Recognition

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Sound Recognition, then turn on Sound Recognition.
2. Tap Sounds, then turn on the sounds you want iPhone to recognize.

**Tip:** To quickly turn Sound Recognition on or off, [Use and customize Control Center on iPhone](#).

---

### Add a custom alarm, appliance, or doorbell

You can also set up iPhone to recognize a custom alarm, appliance, or doorbell if they aren't recognized automatically.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Sound Recognition > Sounds.

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

2. Tap Custom Alarm or Custom Appliance or Doorbell, then enter a name.
  3. When your alarm, appliance, or doorbell is ready, place iPhone near the sound and minimize background noise.
  4. Tap Start Listening, then follow the onscreen instructions.
- 

## Set up and use RTT and TTY on iPhone

If you have hearing or speech difficulties, you can communicate by telephone using Teletype (TTY) or real-time text (RTT)—protocols that transmit text as you type and allow the recipient to read the message right away. RTT is a more advanced protocol that transmits audio as you type text.


iPhone provides built-in Software RTT and TTY from the Phone app—it requires no additional devices. If you turn on Software RTT/TTY, iPhone defaults to the RTT protocol whenever it's supported by the carrier.


iPhone also supports Hardware TTY, so you can connect iPhone to an external TTY device with the iPhone TTY Adapter (sold separately in many regions).

**Important:** RTT and TTY aren't supported by all carriers or in all countries or regions. RTT and TTY functionality depends on your carrier and network environment. When making an emergency call in the U.S., iPhone sends special characters or tones to alert the operator. The operator's ability to receive or respond to these tones can vary depending on your location. Apple doesn't guarantee that the operator will be able to receive or respond to an RTT or TTY call.

---

## Set up RTT and TTY

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility.
2. Tap RTT/TTY or TTY, then do any of the following:
  - If your iPhone has Dual SIM, choose a line.
  - Turn on Software RTT/TTY or Software TTY.
  - Tap Relay Number, then enter the phone number to use for relay calls using Software RTT/TTY.
  - Turn on Send Immediately to send each character as you type. Turn it off to complete messages before sending.
  - Turn on Answer All Calls as RTT/TTY.
  - Turn on Hardware TTY.

When RTT or TTY is turned on,  appears in the status bar at the top of the screen.


---

## Connect iPhone to an external TTY device

If you turned on Hardware TTY in Settings, connect iPhone to your TTY device using the iPhone TTY Adapter. If Software TTY is also turned on, incoming calls default to Hardware TTY. For information about using a particular TTY device, see the documentation that came with it.

---

## Start an RTT or TTY call


1. Open the Phone app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Contacts, choose a contact, then tap the phone number.
3. Choose RTT/TTY Call or RTT/TTY Relay Call.
4. Wait for the call to connect, then tap RTT/TTY.


iPhone defaults to the RTT protocol whenever it's supported by the carrier.


If you haven't turned RTT on and you receive an incoming RTT call, tap the RTT button to answer the call with RTT.

---

## Type text during an RTT or TTY call

1. Open the Phone app  on your iPhone when you receive a call or make an [RTT or TTY call](#).
2. Enter your message in the text field.


If you turned on Send Immediately in Settings, your recipient sees each character as you type. Otherwise, tap  to send the message.


3. To also transmit audio, tap .


---

## Review the transcript of a Software RTT or TTY call

Your iPhone can capture voice messages and provide auto-answer transcriptions for incoming calls.

1. Open the Phone app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Recents.

RTT and TTY calls have  next to them.

3. Next to the call you want to review, tap .


---

*Note:* Continuity features aren't available for RTT and TTY support. Standard voice call rates apply for both Software RTT/TTY and Hardware TTY calls.

## Flash the LED for alerts on iPhone

If you can't hear the sounds that announce incoming calls and other alerts, iPhone can flash its LED (next to the camera lens on the back of iPhone). The LED flashes only if iPhone is locked.

**Tip:** LED Flash for Alerts is a useful feature for anyone who might miss audible alerts in a noisy environment.

- 
1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Audio/Visual, then turn on LED Flash for Alerts.
  2. To prevent LED flashes when iPhone is in silent mode, turn off Flash on Silent.
-




## Adjust audio settings on iPhone

You can adjust mono audio, left-right stereo balance, and phone noise cancellation to suit your hearing needs. With supported Apple and Beats headphones, you can amplify soft sounds and adjust certain frequencies to best suit your hearing. These adjustments help music, movies, phone calls, and podcasts sound more crisp and clear.


---

### Balance the audio


1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Audio/Visual.
  2. Adjust any of the following:
    - *Mono Audio*: Turn on to combine the left and right channels to play the same content.
    - *Balance*: Drag the Left Right Stereo Balance slider.
- 





### Use phone noise cancellation

Phone noise cancellation uses air pressure to reduce ambient background noise. This means that you hear better when you're holding the receiver to your ear in certain noisy environments. Phone noise cancellation is available and on by default on iPhone 12 and earlier, and can be turned off for your comfort.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Audio/Visual.
  2. Turn Phone Noise Cancellation off or on.
-

## Adjust frequencies, tone, and amplification

1. Make sure you've paired your [AirPods](#) or Beats headphones (with [Bluetooth®](#)), or connected your [EarPods](#), and make sure that you're in a quiet environment.
2. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Audio/Visual > Headphone Accommodations, then turn on Headphone Accommodations.
3. Tap Custom Audio Setup, then follow the onscreen instructions. Or manually set any of the following:
  - *Frequencies*: Below Tune Audio For, choose an option to boost different frequencies.
  - *Soft sounds*: Drag the slider to set the amplification level.
4. To preview your audio settings, tap Play Sample.
5. Scroll down, then do any of the following:
  - Turn on Phone to apply the settings to phone calls.
  - Turn on Media to apply them to media playback like music, movies, and podcasts.

**Tip:** Quickly access Headphone Accommodations by tapping  in [Control Center](#). (If you don't see , add it to Control Center—go to Settings  > Control Center, then tap  next to Hearing.)


For information about applying Headphone Accommodations settings to Transparency Mode and Conversation Boost when using AirPods Pro and iPhone, see [Customize Transparency mode for AirPods Pro](#) in the AirPods User Guide.

---


## Add an audiogram

You can use an audiogram to customize the audio settings on supported Apple and Beats headphones and improve their accuracy and sound quality.

Using pure-tone audio tests, audiograms display how loud sounds need to be in order for you to hear them.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Audio/Visual > Headphone Accommodations.
2. Turn on Headphone Accommodations, then tap Custom Audio Setup.
3. Select an audiogram, or tap Add Audiogram.

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

**Tip:** Create an audiogram in the Health app . See [Download a third-party audiogram app](#).


If the audiogram results from both ears are nearly symmetric, both left and right outputs are fit with the average of their profiles. If they're asymmetric, the outputs are fit for the better ear.


---

## Play background sounds on iPhone to mask environmental noise

You can play calming sounds—such as ocean or rain—to mask unwanted environmental noise and help minimize distractions so you can focus or rest.

---

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Audio/Visual > Background Sounds, then turn on Background Sounds.

**Tip:** You can quickly reach Background Sounds when you tap  in [Control Center](#), if you've added it there.

2. Set any of the following:
    - *Sound:* Choose a sound; the audio file downloads to your iPhone.
    - *Volume:* Drag the slider.
    - *Use When Media is Playing:* Adjust the volume of the background sound when iPhone is playing music or other media.
    - *Stop Sounds When Locked:* Background sounds stop playing when iPhone is locked.
- 


## Display subtitles and captions on iPhone

iPhone can provide subtitles, closed captions, and transcriptions so you can follow along more easily with audio and video.

---


## Turn on subtitles and captions in the Apple TV app

When you play video content in a supported app, you can turn on subtitles and closed captions (if available). iPhone usually shows standard subtitles and captions, but you can also choose special accessible captions—such as subtitles for the deaf and hard of hearing (SDH)—if available.

1. While playing video content, tap .
2. Choose from the list of available subtitles and captions.

---



## Customize the subtitles and captions in supported video apps

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Subtitles & Captioning.
2. If you prefer closed captioning or subtitles for the deaf and hard of hearing when available, turn on Closed Captions + SDH.
3. Tap Style, then choose an existing caption style or create a new style based on the following:
  - Font, size, and color
  - Background color and opacity
  - Text opacity, edge style, and highlight

---

## Show transcriptions for Intercom messages from HomePod on iPhone

If members of your home [use HomePod for Intercom messages](#), iPhone can transcribe Intercom messages for you.

- 
1. In the Home app, tap , then tap Home Settings.
  2. Tap Intercom, then choose when you receive notifications.
  3. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Subtitles & Captioning, then turn on Show Audio Transcriptions.
- 

See [Use HomePod as an Intercom](#) in the HomePod User Guide.

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

## Get live captions in real time on iPhone


With Live Captions (beta), spoken dialogue is turned into text and displayed in real time on your iPhone screen. You can more easily follow the audio in any app, such as FaceTime or Podcasts, and in live conversations around you. Live Captions is available on iPhone 11 and later when the [primary language is set](#) to English (U.S.) or English (Canada).



**Important:** The accuracy of Live Captions may vary and shouldn't be relied upon in high-risk or emergency situations.

---







## Set up and customize Live Captions

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Live Captions (Beta).
2. Turn on Live Captions, then tap Appearance to customize the text, size, and color of the captions.
3. By default, Live Captions are shown across all apps. To get live captions only for certain apps such as FaceTime or RTT, turn them on below In-App Live Captions.

---


## See live captions

With Live Captions turned on, iPhone automatically transcribes the dialogue in apps or around you. You can do any of the following:

- *Transcribe a conversation near you:* Tap .
  - *Make the transcription window bigger:* Tap . To restore the window to the smaller size, tap .
  - *Pause the transcription:* Tap .
  - *Hide the transcription window:* Tap . To restore the window, tap .
-

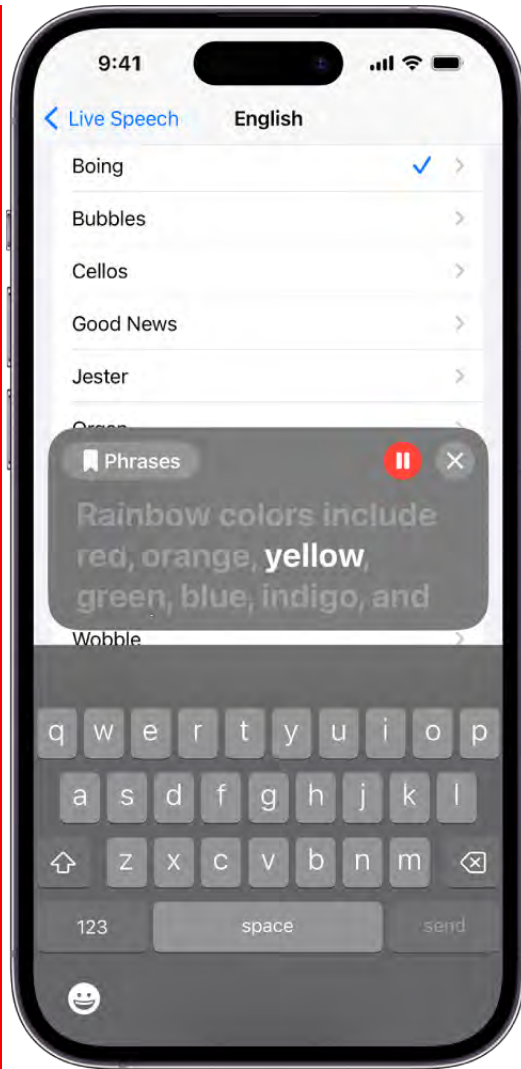
# Speech

## Set up speech-related accessibility features on iPhone

In the Accessibility pane of Settings , you can customize options to best suit your speech needs. You can communicate with family, friends, and colleagues in the way that works best for you, whether you are non-speaking, at risk of speech loss, or someone with a speech disability.

Action	Related features and settings
Type words you want spoken	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">Live Speech</a></li></ul>
Record your voice	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">Personal Voice</a></li></ul>
Make Siri requests in text	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">Type to Siri</a></li></ul>
Use sound actions for Switch Control	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">Switch Control</a></li></ul>
Allow more time for Siri requests	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">Siri Pause Time</a></li></ul>

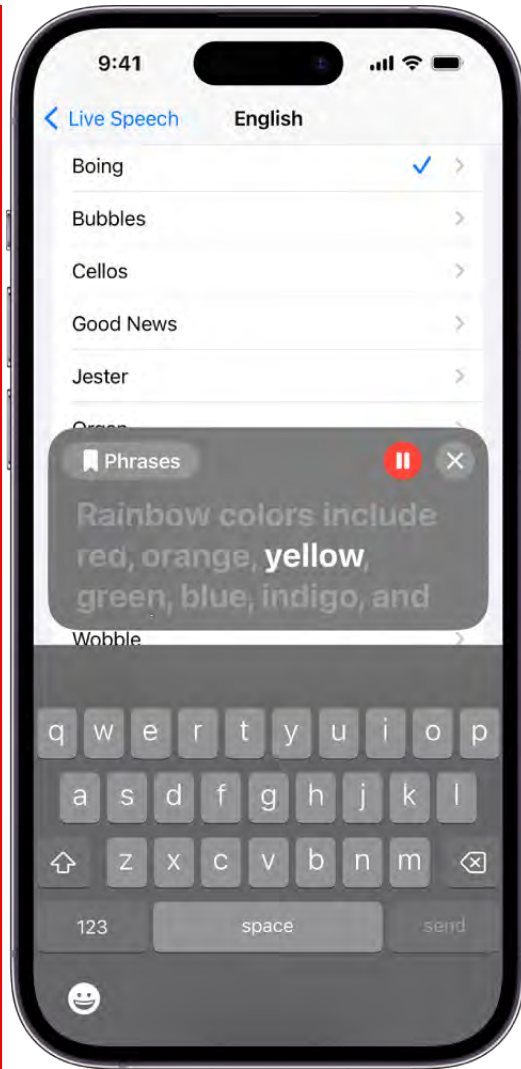
DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL




## Type to speak using Live Speech on iPhone

You can type to speak in FaceTime, Phone, and assistive communication apps on iPhone using any of dozens of voices, including your Personal Voice. With Live Speech, you can type and have your words spoken in person, or on phone and FaceTime calls. (Available in select languages.)







1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Live Speech, then turn on Live Speech.
2. Choose a voice. You can use Live Speech with any voice you choose (including your [Personal Voice](#)).
3. Triple-click the side button or Home button (depending on your iPhone model), then type what you want to have spoken.


**Tip:** Add your most frequently used phrases so you can quickly access them. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Live Speech, then tap Favorite Phrases.

4. Tap Send to have your phrase spoken.

People hear your words spoken in the conversation if you're using the FaceTime  or Phone  apps. Otherwise they will come out of the speaker on your iPhone.

## Record a Personal Voice on iPhone

If you're at risk of speech loss or someone with a speech disability, you can create a personalized voice on iPhone to use with Live Speech. With Personal Voice, you can create a voice that sounds like your own to use to type to speak in FaceTime, Phone, and assistive communication apps. (Available in select languages.)

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Personal Voice.
2. Tap Create a Personal Voice, then follow the series of prompts.

(If you need to pause your recording session, tap Done. To resume, tap Continue Recording.)

*Note:* To see the option to create your Personal Voice, you must first [set a passcode](#).


Your Personal Voice is saved securely on your iPhone for you to use during Phone and FaceTime calls, in-person conversations, and third-party alternative and augmentative communication (AAC) apps.

**Important:** You may only use Personal Voice to create a voice on your iPhone that sounds like you using your own personal voice for your personal, non-commercial use. (Your [Legacy Contact](#) won't be able to access your Personal Voice.) See the Apple Support article, [How to create a Personal Voice](#).

---

# Cognitive

## Set up cognitive-related accessibility features on iPhone

In the Accessibility pane of Settings , you can customize options to best suit your cognitive needs. You can reduce distraction and sensory stimulus, turn on captions or audio features to read the content on your screen, and more.

Action	Related features and settings
Reduce distraction and sensory stimulus	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Background sounds</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Onscreen motion</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Focus</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Guided Access</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Hide ads and distractions in Safari</a></li> </ul>
Get help with everyday tasks	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Siri</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Shortcuts</a></li> </ul>
Pair audio and text	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Live Captions (beta)</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Spoken content</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Audio message transcripts</a></li> </ul>
Let iPhone type for you	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Dictation</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Predictive text</a></li> </ul>
Keep an eye on your screen use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Screen Time</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">App Limits</a></li> </ul>
Locate people and things	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Find My friend</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Find My device</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Separation alerts</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Check in</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Use Precision Finding on iPhone XY to meet up with a friend</a></li> </ul>
Simplify sign-ins / Store what you might forget	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Keychain</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Face ID</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Touch ID</a></li> </ul>
Identify people and places	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Facial recognition</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">People detection</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Image descriptions</a></li> </ul>

You can also set up Assistive Access, which gives those with cognitive disabilities the option to perform the most common tasks, such as taking photos and communicating with their inner circle of family and friends, while reducing cognitive load and offering more focused choices. See the [Assistive Access User Guide](#). **COMMENT: Link will work when published**

## Use Guided Access on iPhone


Guided Access helps you stay focused on a task by temporarily restricting iPhone to a single app, and allowing you to control which app features are available. You can do any of the following:

- Disable areas of the screen that aren't relevant to a task, or areas where an accidental gesture might cause a distraction
- Disable the iPhone hardware buttons
- Limit how long someone can use the app



---

## Set up Guided Access

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Guided Access, then turn on Guided Access.
2. Adjust any of the following:

- *Passcode Settings*: Tap Set Guided Access Passcode, then enter a passcode.

You can also turn on Face ID (on an iPhone with Face ID) or Touch ID (on an iPhone with a Home button) as a way to end a Guided Access session.

- *Time Limits*: Play a sound or speak the time remaining before a Guided Access session ends.
  - *Accessibility Shortcut*: Turn the shortcut on or off during Guided Access sessions.
  - *Display Auto-Lock*: Set how long it takes iPhone to automatically lock during a Guided Access session.
-

## Start a Guided Access session

1. Open the app you want to use.
2. To turn on Guided Access, do one of the following:
  - **Siri:** Say something like: "Turn on Guided Access." [Learn how to use Siri.](#)
  - Use [Control Center](#) if you've added it there.
  - Use [Accessibility Shortcut](#) if you've set it up.
3. Circle any areas of the screen you want to disable. Drag the mask into position or use the handles to adjust its size.
4. Tap Options, then turn on or off any of the following:
  - Side Button
  - Volume Buttons
  - Motion (to prevent iPhone from switching from portrait to landscape or from responding to other motions)
  - Keyboards
  - Touch
  - Time Limit
5. Tap Start.

**Important:** Crash Detection and Emergency Services are not available while using Guided Access. Exit Guided Access to use Crash Detection or to make emergency calls.

---

## End a Guided Access session

Do any of the following:

- *Use the Guided Access passcode:* Triple-click the side button or Home button (depending on your iPhone model), then enter the Guided Access passcode.
  - *Use Face ID:* On an iPhone with [Face ID turned on](#), double-click the side button, then unlock with Face ID.
  - *Use Touch ID:* On an iPhone with [Touch ID turned on](#), double-click the Home button, then unlock with Touch ID.
-

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

To set up an iPhone with a limited interface, see [Assistive Access User the Guide](#).



# Privacy and security

## Use the built-in privacy and security protections of iPhone

iPhone is designed to protect your data and your privacy. Built-in privacy features minimize how much of your information is available to anyone but you, and you can adjust what information is shared and where you share it. Built-in security features help prevent anyone but you from accessing the data on your iPhone and in iCloud.

To take maximum advantage of the privacy and security features built into iPhone, follow these practices.

### Protect access to your iPhone

- *Set a strong passcode:* [Setting a passcode](#) to unlock iPhone is the most important thing you can do to safeguard your device.
- *Use Face ID or Touch ID:* Face ID (supported models) or Touch ID (supported models) provides a secure and convenient way to unlock your iPhone, authorize purchases and payments, and sign in to many third-party apps. See [Set up Face ID on iPhone](#) or [Set up Touch ID on iPhone](#).
- *Turn on Find My iPhone:* Find My helps you [find your iPhone](#) if it's lost or stolen and prevents anyone else from activating or using your iPhone if it's missing.
- *Control what features are available without unlocking your iPhone:* [Disallow or allow access](#) to some commonly used features, such as Control Center and USB connections, when your device is locked.

### Keep your Apple ID secure

Your Apple ID provides access to your data in iCloud and your account information for services like the App Store and Apple Music. To learn how to protect the security of your Apple ID, see [Keep your Apple ID secure on iPhone](#).

### Make account sign-ins safer and easier

For participating websites and apps, there are multiple ways to make sign-in more convenient and secure.

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

- *Sign in with passkeys:* Passkeys let you [sign in](#) to website and app accounts with Face ID or Touch ID instead of a password. Because a passkey doesn't leave the devices where you're signed in with your Apple ID, and because it's specific to the website or app you create it for, it's protected from leaks and phishing attempts. And unlike a password, you don't have to create, guard, or remember it.
- *Use Sign in with Apple:* You can use your Apple ID instead of creating and remembering user names and passwords for signing in to accounts. [Sign in with Apple](#) also provides the security of two-factor authentication, and it limits the information shared about you.
- *Let iPhone create strong passwords:* If passkey support or Sign in with Apple isn't available when you sign up for a service, let iPhone automatically [create a strong password](#) that you don't have to remember.

For all your website and app passwords, there are many other ways to make sign-in safer and easier.

- *Replace weak passwords:* If you create any weak or compromised passwords, iPhone automatically [identifies them](#) for you to fix.
- *Share passkeys and passwords securely:* Use AirDrop to securely [share a passkey or password](#) with someone using their iPhone, iPad, or Mac.
- *Use the built-in authenticator for two-factor authentication:* For websites and apps that offer two-factor authentication, [fill in automatically generated verification codes](#) without relying on SMS messages or additional apps.
- *Easily fill in SMS passcodes:* You can automatically [fill in one-time passcodes](#) sent from websites and apps to your iPhone.
- *Keep passkeys and passwords up to date on all your devices:* iCloud Keychain automatically [keeps your credentials](#) up to date across your other devices.

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

## Manage the information you share with people and apps

- *Use Safety Check:* You can quickly and conveniently [review and update](#) information you share with people and apps. If your personal safety is at risk, you can also use [Safety Check](#) to immediately [stop sharing information](#).
- *Control app tracking:* All apps are required to ask your permission before tracking you or your iPhone across websites and apps owned by other companies for advertising or to share your information with a data broker. You can [change permission](#) later, and you can stop all apps from requesting permission.
- *Control what you share with apps:* You can review and adjust [the data you share with apps](#), [the location information you share](#), [the hardware you share](#), and [how Apple delivers advertising to you in the App Store, Apple News, and Stocks](#).
- *Review the privacy practices of apps:* [Go to the app's product page](#) in the App Store for a developer-reported summary of the app's privacy practices, including what data is collected. For the apps that you download, [review the App Privacy Report](#), which shows you how apps are using the permissions you granted them.

## Protect your email privacy

- *Protect your Mail activity:* [Turn on Mail Privacy Protection](#) to make it harder for senders to learn about your Mail activity. Mail Privacy Protection hides your IP address so senders can't link it to your other online activity or use it to determine your exact location. Mail Privacy Protection also prevents senders from seeing whether you've opened the email they sent you.
- *Hide your personal email address:* When you subscribe to iCloud+, Hide My Email allows you to generate unique, random email addresses that forward to your personal email account. You don't have to share your personal email address when [filling out forms or signing up for newsletters](#) on the web, or when [sending email](#).

## Protect your web browsing

- *Use the internet more privately with iCloud Private Relay:* When you subscribe to iCloud+, you can use iCloud Private Relay to [help prevent websites and network providers](#) from creating a detailed profile about you.
- *Manage your privacy, and help protect yourself against malicious websites:* Safari helps prevent trackers from following you across websites. You can review the Privacy Report to see a summary of trackers that have been encountered and prevented by Intelligent Tracking Prevention on the current webpage you're visiting. You can also review and adjust Safari settings to keep your browsing activities private from others who use the same device, and help protect yourself from malicious websites. See [Browse privately in Safari on iPhone](#).

## Lock down your iPhone if it's facing a sophisticated cyberattack

If you find your iPhone and personal accounts are targeted by sophisticated remote attacks, you can also help protect yourself with Lockdown Mode. Lockdown Mode offers an extreme level of security for the very few users who, because of who they are or what they do, may be personally targeted by some of the most sophisticated digital threats, such as those from private companies developing state-sponsored mercenary spyware. Lockdown Mode automatically protects Safari, Messages, Home, and many other Apple services and apps. Webpages and internet communications continue working, but with reduction in performance and usability. See [Harden your iPhone from a cyberattack with Lockdown Mode](#).

To get personalized support for these practices, go to the [Apple Support website](#) (not available in all countries or regions).

To learn how Apple designs security into the core of its platforms, see the [Apple Platform Security User Guide](#). To learn more about how Apple protects your information, go to the [Privacy website](#).

---


# Protect access to your iPhone

## Set a passcode on iPhone

For better security, set a passcode that needs to be entered to unlock iPhone when you turn it on or wake it. Setting a passcode also turns on data protection, which encrypts your iPhone data with 256-bit AES encryption. (Some apps may opt out of using data protection.)

---

### Set or change the passcode

1. Go to Settings , then depending on your model, do one of the following:
  - *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Tap Face ID & Passcode.
  - *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Tap Touch ID & Passcode.
2. Tap Turn Passcode On or Change Passcode.

To view options for creating a password, tap Passcode Options. The most secure options are Custom Alphanumeric Code and Custom Numeric Code.

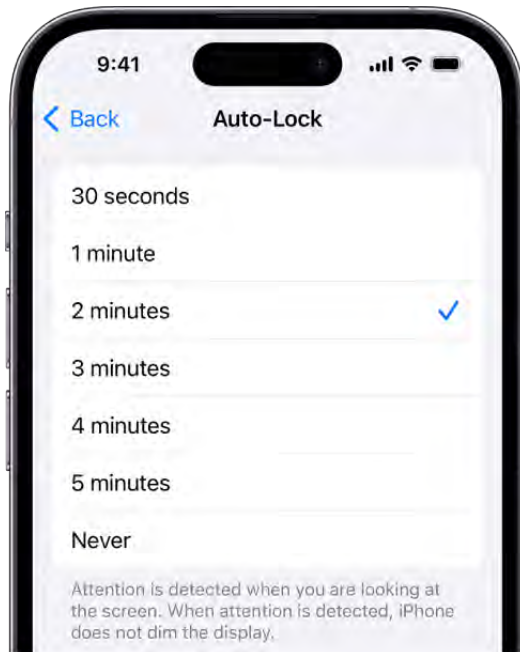
After you set a passcode, on supported models you can [use Face ID](#) or [Touch ID](#) to unlock iPhone (depending on your model). For additional security, however, you must always enter your passcode to unlock your iPhone under the following conditions:

- You turn on or restart your iPhone.
  - You haven't unlocked your iPhone for more than 48 hours.
  - You haven't unlocked your iPhone with the passcode in the last 6.5 days, and you haven't unlocked it with Face ID or Touch ID in the last 4 hours.
  - Your iPhone receives a remote lock command.
  - There are five unsuccessful attempts to unlock your iPhone with Face ID or Touch ID.
  - An attempt to use Emergency SOS is initiated (see [Use Emergency SOS](#)).
  - An attempt to view your Medical ID is initiated (see [Set up and view your Medical ID](#)).
-

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

## Change when iPhone automatically locks


Go to Settings  > Display & Brightness > Auto-Lock, then set a length of time.



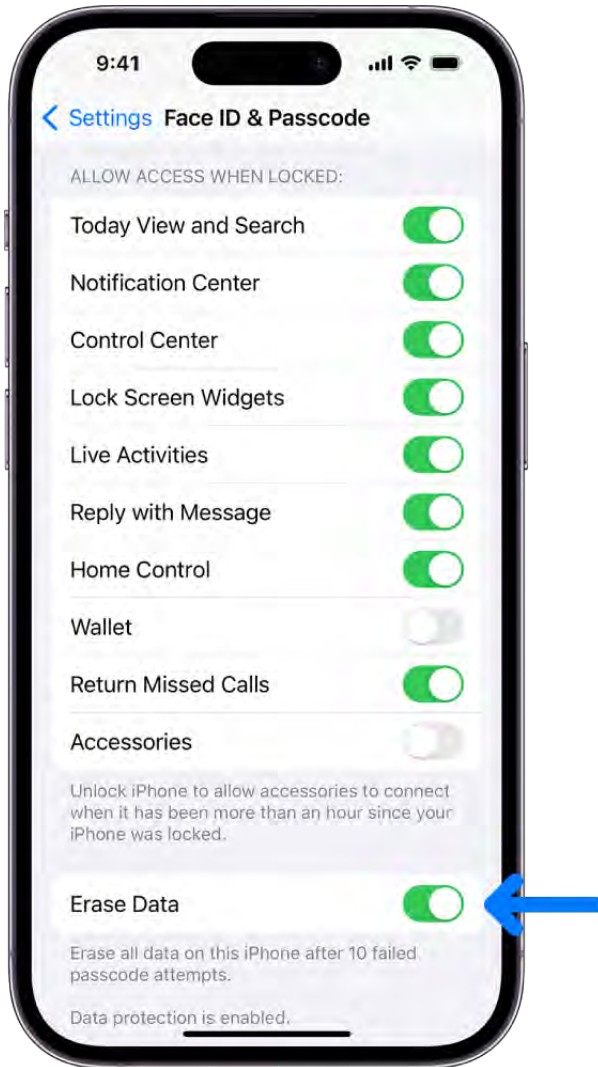
---

## Erase data after 10 failed passcodes

Set iPhone to erase all information, media, and personal settings after 10 consecutive failed passcode attempts.

1. Go to Settings , then do one of the following:
  - *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Tap Face ID & Passcode.
  - *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Tap Touch ID & Passcode.
2. Scroll to the bottom and turn on Erase Data.


DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL



After all data is erased, you must [restore your device from a backup](#). If you didn't back up your iPad, you need to [set it up again as new](#).

---

### Turn off the passcode

1. Go to Settings , then do one of the following:
    - *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Tap Face ID & Passcode.
    - *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Tap Touch ID & Passcode.
  2. Tap Turn Passcode Off.
-

## Reset the passcode

If you enter the wrong passcode six times in a row, you'll be locked out of your device, and you'll receive a message that says iPhone is disabled. If you can't remember your passcode, you can erase your iPhone with a computer or with recovery mode, then set a new passcode. See the Apple Support article [If you forgot the passcode on your iPhone, or your iPhone is disabled](#).

*Note:* If you made an iCloud or computer backup before you forgot your passcode, you can restore your data and settings from the backup.

---


## Set up Face ID on iPhone

Use Face ID (supported models) to securely and conveniently unlock iPhone, authorize purchases and payments, and sign in to many third-party apps by simply glancing at your iPhone.

To use Face ID, you must also [set a passcode](#) on your iPhone.



## Set up Face ID or add an alternate appearance

- If you didn't set up Face ID when you first set up your iPhone, go to Settings  > Face ID & Passcode > Set up Face ID, then follow the onscreen instructions.
- To set up an additional appearance for Face ID to recognize, go to Settings > Face ID & Passcode > Set Up an Alternate Appearance, then follow the onscreen instructions.




If you have physical limitations, you can tap [Accessibility Options](#) during Face ID set up. When you do this, setting up facial recognition doesn't require the full range of head motion. Using Face ID is still secure, but it requires more consistency in how you look at iPhone.

Face ID also has an accessibility feature you can use if you're blind or have low vision. If you don't want Face ID to require that you look at iPhone with your eyes open, go to Settings > Accessibility, then turn off [Require Attention for Face ID](#). This feature is automatically turned off if you turn on VoiceOver when you first set up iPhone. See [Change Face ID and attention settings on iPhone](#).

---

## Use Face ID while wearing a face mask

On iPhone 12 models, iPhone 13 models, iPhone 14 models, and iPhone XY models, you can use Face ID to unlock your phone while you wear a face mask (or other covering that blocks your mouth and nose).

When you turn on Face ID with a Mask, Face ID analyzes the unique characteristics around your eyes, and it works with all of the Face ID options you turn on in Settings  > Face ID & Passcode.

*Note:* Face ID is most accurate when it's set up for full-face recognition only.

Go to Settings > Face ID & Passcode, then do any of the following:

- *Allow Face ID to work while you wear a face mask:* Turn on Face ID with a Mask, then follow the onscreen instructions.

**Important:** If you usually wear glasses, you can improve the accuracy of Face ID by wearing a pair of transparent glasses (not sunglasses) when you turn on Face ID with a Mask.

- *Add a pair of transparent glasses (not sunglasses) to your appearance:* Tap Add Glasses, then follow the onscreen instructions.
- *Don't allow Face ID to work while you wear a face mask:* Turn off Face ID with a Mask.

Alternatively, you can use Apple Watch with all models of iPhone that support Face ID to unlock iPhone while you wear a face mask. See [Unlock iPhone with Apple Watch](#).

---

## Temporarily disable Face ID

You can temporarily prevent Face ID from unlocking your iPhone.


1. Press and hold the side button and either volume button for 2 seconds.
2. After the sliders appear, press the side button to immediately lock iPhone.

iPhone locks automatically if you don't touch the screen for a minute or so.

The next time you unlock iPhone with your passcode, Face ID is enabled again.

---

## Turn off Face ID

1. Go to Settings  > Face ID & Passcode.
  2. Do one of the following:
    - *Turn off Face ID for specific items only:* Turn off one or more of the options.
    - *Turn off Face ID for face masks:* Turn off Face ID with a Mask.
    - *Turn off Face ID:* Tap Reset Face ID.
- 

If your device is lost or stolen, you can prevent Face ID from being used to unlock your device with Find My iPhone Lost Mode. (See [Locate a device in Find My on iPhone.](#))

For more information about Face ID, see [About Face ID advanced technology.](#)


## Set up Touch ID on iPhone

Use Touch ID (supported models) to securely and conveniently unlock iPhone, authorize purchases and payments, and sign in to many third-party apps by pressing the Home button with your finger or thumb.

To use Touch ID, you must also [set up a passcode](#) on your iPhone.

---

### Turn on fingerprint recognition

1. If you didn't turn on fingerprint recognition when you first set up your iPhone, go to Settings  > Touch ID & Passcode.
2. Turn on any of the options, then follow the onscreen instructions.

If you turn on iTunes & App Store, you're asked for your Apple ID password when you make your first purchase from the App Store, Apple Books, or the iTunes Store. When you make your next purchases, you're asked to use Touch ID.

*Note:* If you can't add a fingerprint or unlock your iPhone using Touch ID, see the Apple Support article [If Touch ID isn't working.](#)

---

### Add a fingerprint


You can add multiple fingerprints (both of your thumbs and forefingers, for example).

1. Go to Settings  > Touch ID & Passcode.

2. Tap Add a Fingerprint.
3. Follow the onscreen instructions.

---

### Name or delete a fingerprint


1. Go to Settings  > Touch ID & Passcode.

If you added more than one fingerprint, place a finger on the Home button to identify its print.

2. Tap the fingerprint, then enter a name (such as "Thumb") or tap Delete Fingerprint.

---

### Turn off Touch ID


Go to Settings  > Touch ID & Passcode, then turn off one or more of the options.

---

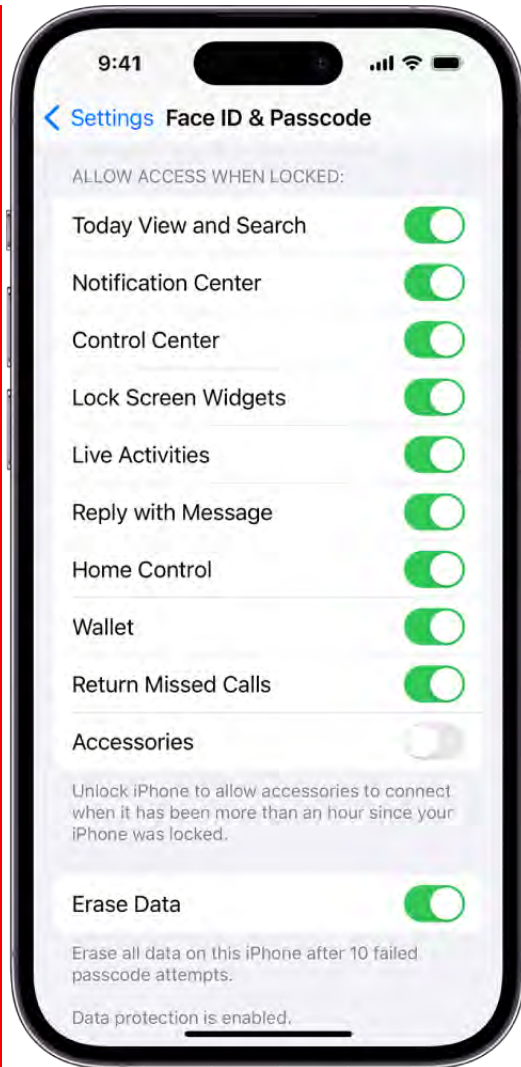
## Control access to information on the iPhone Lock Screen

You can easily access a few commonly used features (such as widgets, media playback controls, and Control Center) from the Lock Screen. You can control access to these items when iPhone is locked. (For security, USB connections aren't allowed when iPhone is locked.)

If you turn off Lock Screen access to a feature, you prevent someone who has your iPhone from viewing any personal information that it might contain (such as an upcoming event in the Calendar widget). However, you also lose quick access to the information yourself.

Go to Settings  > Face ID & Passcode (on an iPhone with Face ID) or Touch ID & Passcode (on an iPhone with a Home button), then select your options below Allow Access When Locked.

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL



You can turn access on or off to the following features while iPhone is locked:

- Widgets (see [Add, edit, and remove widgets on iPhone](#))
- Notification Center (see [Change notification settings on iPhone](#))
- Control Center (see [Use and customize Control Center on iPhone](#))
- Siri (see [Use Siri on iPhone](#))
- Replying to messages (see [Send and reply to messages on iPhone](#))
- Home Control (see [Intro to Home on iPhone](#))
- Wallet (see [Use passes in Wallet on iPhone](#))
- Returning missed calls (see [Answer or decline incoming calls on iPhone](#))

DO NOT DISTRIBUTE

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

- Connecting to a Mac, a Windows PC, or an accessory with USB (such as when you connect iPhone to your computer using USB)

**Important:** If you change the default setting and allow USB connections when iPhone is locked, you disable an important security feature of your iPhone.

You can also supply medical information and emergency contacts in a Medical ID that first responders and others can view on your iPhone when it's locked. See [Set up and view your Medical ID](#).

## Keep your Apple ID secure on iPhone


Your Apple ID is the account you use to access Apple services like the App Store, Apple Music, iCloud, iMessage, FaceTime, and more. Your account includes the email address and password you use to sign in as well as the contact, payment, and security details you use across Apple services. Apple employs industry-standard practices to safeguard your Apple ID.

---

## Best practices for maximizing the security of your Apple ID

- Don't let others use your Apple ID, even family members.


To share purchases, subscriptions, a family calendar, and more without sharing Apple IDs, [set up Family Sharing](#).

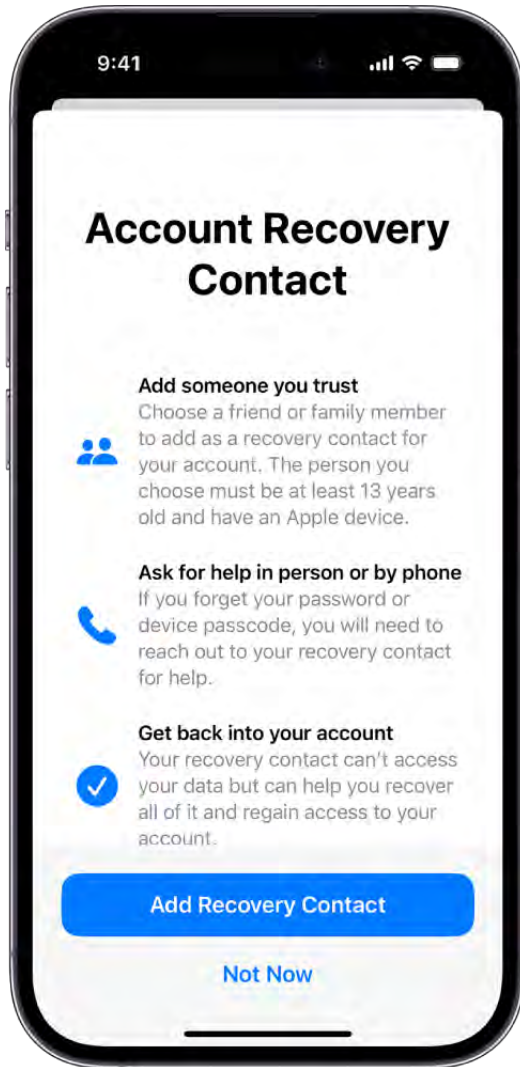
- Use two-factor authentication. If you created your Apple ID on a device with iOS 13.4, iPadOS 13.4, macOS 10.15.4, or later, your account automatically uses two-factor authentication. If you previously created an Apple ID account without two-factor authentication, turn on two-factor authentication.
- Never provide your password, security questions, verification codes, recovery key, or any other account security details to anyone else. Apple will never ask you for this information.
- When accessing your Apple ID account page in Safari or another web browser, look for the lock icon  in the address field to verify that your session is encrypted and secure.
- When using a public computer, always sign out when your session is complete to prevent other people from accessing your account.
- Avoid phishing scams. Don't click links in suspicious email or text messages and never provide personal information on any website you aren't certain is legitimate. See the Apple Support article [Recognize and avoid phishing messages, phony support calls, and other scams](#).
- Don't use your password with other online accounts.


---

## Add Account Recovery Contacts

Choose one or more people you trust as Account Recovery Contacts to help you reset your Apple ID password and regain access to your account if you ever forget your password or get locked out.

Go to Settings  > [your name] > Sign-In & Security > Account Recovery, tap Add Recovery Contact, then follow the onscreen instructions.




For more information, go to Settings  > [your name] > Sign-In & Security, then tap "Learn more" below Add Recovery Contact.

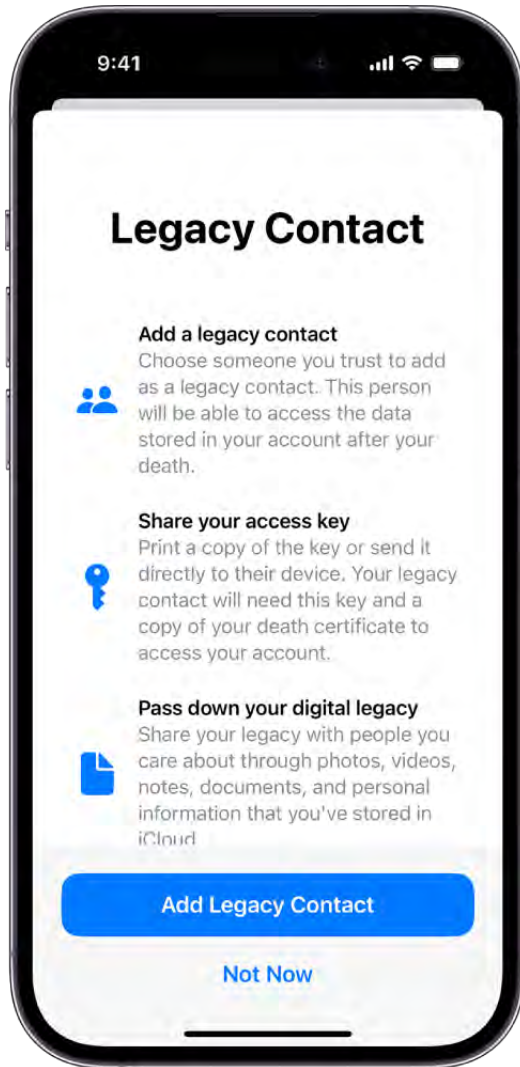
---

## Add Legacy Contacts

The Digital Legacy program allows you to designate people as Legacy Contacts so they can access your Apple ID account in the event of your death.

Go to Settings  > [your name] > Sign-In & Security > Legacy Contact, tap Add Legacy Contact, then follow the onscreen instructions.





For more information about how to share the access key with a legacy contact, how to remove a legacy contact, and how your legacy contact can request access to your account, see the Apple Support article [How to add a Legacy Contact for your Apple ID](#). Also see the Apple Support article [Data that a Legacy Contact can access](#).

---

### Generate a recovery key for your account

For additional control over your account security, you have the option to generate a recovery key that helps you reset your account password or regain access to your Apple ID. A recovery key is a randomly generated 28-character code that you should keep in a safe place. You can reset your account password by either entering your recovery key or using another device already signed in with your Apple ID. To ensure you have access to your account, you are personally responsible for maintaining access to the recovery key and your trusted devices.

See the Apple Support article [How to generate a recovery key](#).

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

For more information about best practices, see the Apple Support article [Security and your Apple ID](#).

To set up or manage your Apple ID, go to the [Apple ID website](#).

If you forgot your Apple ID or password, see the [Recover your Apple ID website](#).

---

# Make sign-ins safer and easier

## Use passkeys to sign in to apps and websites on iPhone

You can create and save passkeys to replace the passwords you use to sign in to supported apps and websites on your iPhone.

Passkeys are easier to use than passwords, because you don't need to remember your user name. Passkeys are more secure, because they're encrypted and stored in your iCloud Keychain, where they aren't visible to anyone (including Apple). And they work on all your devices that are signed in to the same Apple ID.

**Note:** To use passkeys, iOS 16, iPadOS 16, macOS 13, or tvOS 16 (or later) is required. [iCloud Keychain](#) and [two-factor authentication](#) must also be turned on.

---

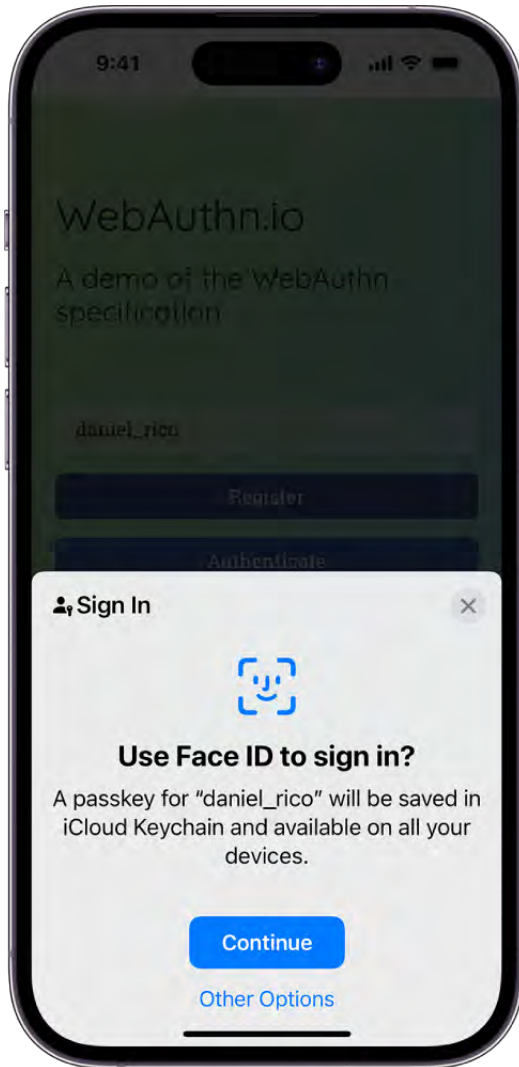
### Create and save a passkey using your iPhone

You can create and save passkeys for apps and websites that support them.

**Note:** The instructions for creating and saving a passkey can vary depending on the app, website, or browser, but they typically consist of steps similar to the ones below.

1. On your iPhone, go to the sign-in screen for a supported website or app and do one of the following:
  - *If you're setting up a new account:* Tap the button or link for setting up new accounts, then follow the onscreen instructions.
  - *If you already have an existing account:* Sign in with your account name and password, then go to the account settings or management screen.
2. When you see the option to save a passkey for the account, tap Continue.

Your passkey is saved.



*Note:* If you don't see a passkey option, it means the app or website doesn't currently support passkeys.

The passkeys you create are stored on your iPhone at Settings > Passwords.

You can also save a passkey to a hardware security key. Tap "Other options," "Save on another device," or similar (if available), then follow the onscreen instructions for saving a passkey. See [Use security keys to sign in to your Apple ID account on iPhone](#).

---

### Use a passkey to sign in to a website or app on your iPhone

After you create and save a passkey for a website or app, you can use the passkey whenever you sign in.

*Note:* The instructions for signing in with a passkey can vary depending on the app, website, or browser, but they typically consist of steps similar to the ones below.

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

1. On your iPhone, go to the website or app and tap the account name field on the sign-in screen.
2. Tap the suggested account name that appears at the bottom of the screen or near the top of the keyboard. If the account name doesn't appear, or you want to use a different one, enter it.
3. Use Face ID or Touch ID to complete sign in. If you didn't set up Face ID or Touch ID on your iPhone, enter your device passcode (the code you use to unlock your iPhone).

The passkey you saved completes the sign-in automatically.

---

### **Use a passkey saved on your iPhone to sign in on another device**

If you're using a device not associated with your Apple ID (such as a computer at a public library, an internet cafe, or a friend's house), and you have your iPhone with you, you can sign in to apps or websites on that device using the passkeys you created for them.

*Note:* The instructions for using a passkey on another device can vary depending on the app, website, or browser, but they typically consist of steps similar to the ones below.

1. On the other device, go to the website or app and select the account name field on the sign-in screen.
2. Select "Other options," "Passkey from nearby device," or similar, then follow the onscreen instructions to display a QR code on the screen.
3. Use your iPhone camera to scan the QR code.

The passkey that's saved to iCloud Keychain completes the sign-in automatically.

---

### **Create a passkey on a device that's not your own**

If you have your iPhone with you, you can create a passkey while using a device not associated with your Apple ID (such as a computer at a public library, an internet cafe, or a friend's house) and save it to iCloud Keychain instead of the device you're using to create the passkey.

*Note:* The instructions for creating a passkey can vary depending on the app, website, or browser, but they typically consist of steps similar to the ones below.

1. On the other device, go to the sign-in page for a supported website or app, then do one of the following:

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

- *If you're setting up a new account:* Tap the button or link for setting up new accounts, then enter a new username.
  - *If you already have an account:* Sign in with your account name and password, then go to the account settings or management screen.
2. When you see the option to save a passkey for the account, select "Other options," "Save on another device," or similar (instead of Continue).

*Note:* If you don't see a passkey option, it means the app or website doesn't currently support passkeys.

3. Select "Save a passkey on a device with a camera," or similar, then follow the onscreen instructions to display a QR code on the screen.
4. Use your iPhone camera to [scan the QR code](#).

The passkey is saved to your iPhone and iCloud Keychain.

---


## Change a passkey

You might need to create a new passkey to replace the existing one (if, for example, you forgot your username).

To change a passkey, follow the steps for an existing account in [Create and save a passkey using your iPhone](#) or [Create a passkey on a device that's not your own](#).

---

## Delete a passkey

1. Go to Settings  > Passwords, then tap the account for the passkey you want to delete.
2. Tap the name of the account, then tap Delete Passkey.

If you delete a passkey, you can create a new one at any time.

---

## Sign in with Apple on iPhone

With Sign in with Apple, you can sign in to participating websites and apps with your Apple ID. You don't need to create and remember new passwords, and your account is protected with two-factor authentication.

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

Sign in with Apple is designed to respect your privacy. Websites and apps can ask only for your name and email address to set up your account, and Apple won't track you as you use them.

Sign in with Apple requires two-factor authentication for your Apple ID. This protects your Apple ID, your app accounts, and your app content.

---

### Set up or upgrade an account to Sign in with Apple

When a participating website or app asks you to set up or upgrade an account, do the following:

1. Tap Sign in with Apple.
2. Follow the onscreen instructions.

Some apps (and websites) don't request your name and email address. In this case, you simply authenticate with Face ID or Touch ID (depending on your model), then start using the app.

Others may ask for your name and email address to set up a personalized account. When an app asks for this information, Sign in with Apple displays your name and the personal email address from your Apple ID account for you to review.

To edit your name, tap it, then use the keyboard to make changes.

To specify an email address, do one of the following:

- *Use your personal email address:* Tap Share My Email.

If you have multiple email addresses associated with your Apple ID, choose the address you want.

- *Hide your email address:* Tap Hide My Email.

This option allows you to receive email from the app without sharing your personal email address. When you choose this option, Apple creates a unique, random email address for you, and any email sent from the app to this address is forwarded to your personal address.

After you review your information and choose an email option, tap Continue, authenticate with Face ID or Touch ID (depending on your model), then start using the app.

---

## Sign in to access your account

After you set up an account with a website or app using Sign in with Apple, you typically don't need to sign in to it again on your iPhone. But if you're asked to sign in (for example, after you sign out of an account), do the following:

1. Tap Sign in with Apple.
  2. Review the Apple ID that appears, then tap Continue.
  3. Authenticate with Face ID or Touch ID (depending on your model).
- 

## Change the address used to forward email

If you chose to hide your email address when you created an account and you have more than one address associated with your Apple ID, you can change the address that receives your forwarded email.

1. Go to Settings > [your name] > Name, Phone Numbers, Email > Forward To.
  2. Choose a different email address, then tap Done.
- 

## Review or change Sign in with Apple settings for websites and apps

1. Go to Settings > [your name] > Password and Security.
2. Tap Apps Using Your Apple ID.

All apps using Sign in with Apple appear in a list.

3. To change a setting for an app, choose the app, then do any of the following:
    - *Turn off forwarding email:* Turn off Forward To. You won't receive any further emails from the app.
    - *Stop using Sign in with Apple:* Tap Stop Using Apple ID. You may be asked to create a new account the next time you try to sign in with the app.
- 

Sign in with Apple also works on your other devices—iPad, Apple Watch, Mac, Apple TV, and iPod touch—where you're signed in with the same Apple ID.

To sign in from an Android app, a Windows app, or any web browser, tap Sign in with Apple, then enter your Apple ID and password.

For more information, see the Apple Support article [What is Sign in with Apple?](#)



## Share passwords or passkeys with people you trust on iPhone

Shared password groups are an easy and secure way to share passwords and passkeys with your family and trusted contacts.

Anyone in the group can add passwords and passkeys. When a shared password changes, it changes on everyone's device.

---

### Create a group

1. On your iPhone, open Settings, then tap Passwords.
2. Tap **+** in the top-right corner, then tap New Shared Group.
3. Enter a name for the group, then tap **+** Add People (under Group Members).
4. Type the name, email address, or phone number of the person or people you want to add, then tap Add.

*Note:* To add someone to your group, they must be in your Contacts app and have a device using iOS 17, iPadOS 17, macOS Sonoma 14 or later. If they can be added to the group, their contact information appears in blue. If it appears in gray, their iPhone or Mac might not support shared password groups.

5. Tap Create.
6. Select the passwords you want to share with the group, then tap Move in the top-right corner.

If you don't want to share any passwords yet, tap Not Now in the top-left corner.

7. You are given the choice to notify the people you have added to the group that they have been invited. If you choose not to, they can also access the invitation under Passwords > Group Invitations.

Your shared passwords are saved in iCloud Keychain, and you can use them like any other saved password.

You'll receive a notification whenever anyone else is invited to the group, and you can leave at any time.

*Note:* If you move a password into the shared group, you can only access the password on a device using iOS 17, iPadOS 17, macOS Sonoma, or later, but you can add the passwords back to a device or Mac manually.

## Manage a group

If you create a group, you can add or remove other members, or delete the group. Other members of the group don't have these options, but they can choose to leave at any time.

1. On your iPhone, open Settings, then tap Passwords.
2. Tap the name of your group, then tap Manage.

You can add or remove other members, or delete the group.

3. When you're finished making changes, tap Done.

---

## Respond to an invitation to a group

When someone adds you to a shared passwords group, they have the option to notify you in Messages. If they don't notify you in Messages, or if you need to find the invitation later, go to Settings > Passwords > Group Invitations.

**Important:** To respond to any invitation, the newest version of iOS 17 must be installed on your iPhone.

1. In Messages, tap the invitation.

Passwords opens in Settings.

2. Tap Accept to join the group. You can also decline the invitation.

**Important:** Don't accept an invitation if you don't recognize the sender.

---

## Automatically fill in strong passwords on iPhone

When you sign up for services on websites and in apps, you can let iPhone create strong passwords for many of your accounts.

iPhone [stores the passwords](#) in iCloud Keychain and fills them in for you automatically, so you don't have to memorize them.

*Note:* Instead of requiring you to sign in with passwords, participating websites and apps support these alternatives:

- *Sign in with Apple:* Lets you use your Apple ID to sign in, and limits the information shared about you. See [Sign in with Apple on iPhone](#).

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

- A *passkey*: Lets you use Face ID or Touch ID to securely sign in without using a password. See [Use passkeys to sign in to apps and websites on iPhone](#).

---

## Create a strong password for a new account

Depending on the website or app, creating a strong password and saving it to iCloud Keychain usually consists of steps similar to these.

1. On the new account screen for the website or app, enter a new account name.

For supported websites and apps, iPhone suggests a unique, complex password.

2. Do one of the following:

- *Choose the suggested password:* Tap Use Strong Password.
- *Edit the suggested password:* Tap Other Options, tap Edit Strong Password, tap the password text field, then make your changes.
- *Get a different strong password:* Tap Other Options, tap Edit Strong Password, then tap the suggested password.
- *Get a strong password consisting of only numbers and letters:* Tap Other Options, then tap No Special Characters.
- *Get a strong password that's easy to type:* Tap Other Options, then tap Easy to Type.
- *Make up your own password:* Tap Other Options, then tap Choose My Own Password.

3. To copy the password so you can paste it into a Confirm Password field if asked, tap Other Options, then tap Copy Strong Password.


4. To [securely add and keep notes](#) about recovery key information, security questions, PIN numbers, and similar details, enter them in the Notes field.

To view the notes later, go to Settings > Passwords, then tap the account.

5. To later allow iPhone to automatically fill in the password for you, tap Yes when you're asked if you want to save the password.

## Automatically fill in a saved password

Depending on the website or app, signing in with your saved password usually consists of steps similar to these.


1. On the sign-in screen for the website or app, tap the account name field.
2. Do one of the following:
  - Tap the account suggested at the bottom of the screen or near the top of the keyboard.
  - Tap , tap Other Passwords, then tap an account.

The password is filled in. To see the password, tap .

To enter an account or password that isn't saved, tap  on the sign-in screen.

---

## Prevent iPhone from automatically filling in passwords

Go to Settings  > Passwords > Password Options, then turn off AutoFill Passwords.


---

## Change weak or compromised passwords on iPhone

When you create and store your own passwords for websites and apps, iPhone automatically identifies common weaknesses (for example, if they're easily guessed or used multiple times). iPhone can also securely monitor your passwords and alert you if they appear in known data leaks.

---


## Change a weak or compromised password

1. Go to Settings  > Passwords > Security Recommendations.

If an account has a weak or compromised password, a message explains the problem.

2. Tap an account.
3. Tap the Password field, then tap Copy Password, so you can paste it where it's requested—for example, when you create a new password and you're asked to enter your old password.
4. Tap Change Password, then change your password on the website or in the app.



If the website or app allows you to [upgrade to Sign in with Apple](#), you can take advantage of the security and convenience of that feature. If you aren't given the upgrade option when you change your password, many accounts allow iPhone to [automatically create a strong password](#) that you don't have to remember.

*Note:* If iPhone warns you about a password for a website or app that's no longer available, you can remove its account from your iPhone and iCloud Keychain. Go to Settings  > Passwords, then swipe left on the account.

---

## Hide a security recommendation

You can hide a security recommendation so that you don't have to continue reviewing it if you're unable to address it.


1. Go to Settings  > Passwords > Security Recommendations, then tap an account.
2. In the Security Recommendation section, tap , then tap Hide.

To view the recommendation later, go to Settings > Passwords > Security Recommendations, scroll to the bottom of the screen, then tap Hidden Security Recommendations. To reshow all security recommendations, tap Reset Hidden Security Recommendations.

---

## Turn detection of compromised passwords on or off

iPhone can monitor your passwords and alert you if they appear in known data leaks.

Go to Settings  > Passwords > Security Recommendations, then turn Detect Compromised Passwords on or off.



---

## View your passwords and related information on iPhone

You can view and copy passwords, add notes like security question reminders, and more with the encrypted account information stored on iPhone. iCloud Keychain securely [keeps this information up to date](#) across all your approved devices.

---


### View and copy a password for a website or app account

1. For an account that uses a password, do one of the following:
    - Say something like: "Show me my passwords." [Learn how to use Siri.](#)
    - Go to Settings  > Passwords.
    - On a sign-in screen, tap .
  2. Tap an account, then tap the Password field.
  3. To copy the password to use elsewhere, tap Copy Password.
- 

### View and copy a password for a Wi-Fi network


1. Go to Settings  > Wi-Fi.

If you're connected to a Wi-Fi network, its name appears at the top of the screen. To see a list of all saved Wi-Fi networks, tap Edit at the top right.

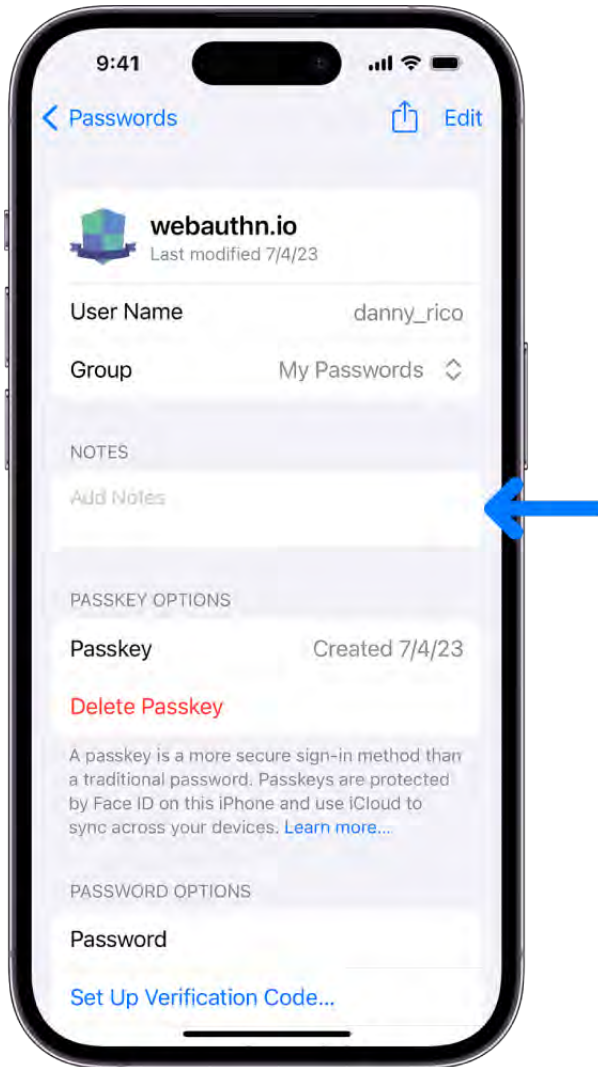
2. Tap  next to a network name.
  3. Tap the Password field.
  4. To copy the password to use elsewhere, tap Copy.
- 

### Add notes for an account with a passkey or password

You can securely keep notes about recovery key information, security questions, PIN numbers, and similar details.

1. Go to Settings  > Passwords, then tap an account.
2. Tap Add Notes, enter your text, then tap Done.



DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL



To view the notes later, go to Settings > Passwords, then tap the account. To update the notes, tap Edit (at the top right), then tap the Notes field.

---

### Go to the website for an account

1. Go to Settings  > Passwords, then tap an account.
2. Do one of the following:
  - Tap .
  - Tap the website URL, tap Copy Website, then paste the URL into the address field of your browser.

---

### Remove an account from your iPhone and iCloud Keychain

Go to Settings  > Passwords, then swipe left on the account.


DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

For example, you might want to remove the account for a website or app that's no longer available.

*Note:* This action doesn't remove the account from the website or app where you created it.

---

### Remove a passkey or password from your iPhone and iCloud Keychain

1. Go to Settings  > Passwords, then tap an account.
2. Tap Delete Password or Delete Passkey.

*Note:* This action doesn't remove the passkey or password from the website or app where you created it.

---

## Share passkeys and passwords securely with AirDrop on iPhone

You can use AirDrop to securely share passkeys and passwords for website and app accounts with someone using an iPhone, iPad, or Mac.

*Note:* To show someone the password you saved for a Wi-Fi network, see [View and copy a password for a Wi-Fi network](#).

---

### Check the AirDrop requirements

Compared to sharing other types of information, AirDrop has more stringent requirements for sharing passkeys and passwords.

- [iCloud Keychain must be set up](#) on your iPhone.
- The person you're sharing with [must be in your contacts list](#) in the Contacts app, and they must be listed with the email address they use for iCloud.
- You must be in the other person's contacts list in the Contacts app, and you must be listed with the email address you use for iCloud.

---


### Send a passkey or password

To share with someone on iPhone or iPad, ask them to open Control Center and [allow AirDrop to receive items](#). To share with someone on a Mac, ask them to allow themselves to be discovered in AirDrop in the Finder.

1. On your iPhone, go to Settings  > Passwords.



DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

2. Tap the account you want to share.
3. Tap , then select the device or picture of the person you want to send the passkey or password to.

---

### Receive a passkey or password

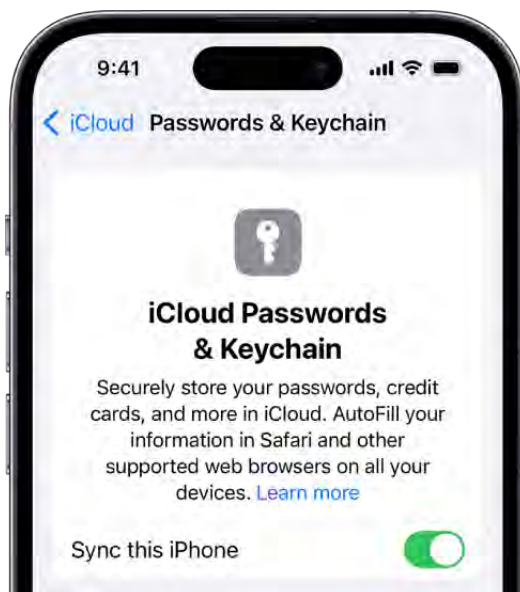
1. If you haven't already done so, [allow AirDrop to receive items](#).
2. When you receive a request to accept a passkey or password from someone else, tap Accept.

The passkey or password is saved to your iPhone, where you can [view its information](#) and let iPhone automatically fill it in on the sign-in screen for the account. The passkey or password is also saved to your iCloud Keychain, so you can use it on other devices where you're signed in with your Apple ID.

---

## Make your passkeys and passwords available on all your devices with iPhone and iCloud Keychain

Use iCloud Keychain to keep your website and app passkeys and passwords, credit card information, Wi-Fi network information, and other account information up to date across all your approved devices and Mac computers (iOS 7, iPadOS 13, OS X 10.9, or later required, except for passkeys, which require iOS 16, iPadOS 16, macOS 13, or tvOS 16 or later). iCloud Keychain is secured with 256-bit AES encryption during storage and transmission, and its data can't be read by Apple.




DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

iCloud Keychain can also keep the accounts you use in Mail, Contacts, Calendar, and Messages up to date across all your iPhone and iPad devices and Mac computers.

---

### Set up iCloud Keychain

If you didn't turn on iCloud Keychain when you first set up your iPhone, go to Settings  > [your name] > iCloud > Passwords and Keychain, turn on iCloud Keychain, then follow the onscreen instructions.

---

### Set up iCloud Keychain on an additional device


When you turn on iCloud Keychain on an additional device, your other devices using iCloud Keychain receive a notification requesting your approval of the additional device.

On one of your other devices, approve the additional device. Your iCloud Keychain automatically begins updating on the additional device.

To approve iCloud Keychain when you don't have access to your other devices, follow the onscreen instructions to use your iCloud Security Code.

---

### Recover your iCloud Keychain if all your devices are lost or stolen

iCloud Keychain syncs across devices to provide convenience and redundancy in case you lose a single device. If all your devices are lost and you've [added a recovery contact](#) to your Apple ID account, your contact can help you recover your iCloud Keychain. To learn how, go to Settings  > [your name] > Sign-In & Security, then tap "Learn more" below Add Recovery Contact.

You can also recover your iCloud Keychain through iCloud Keychain escrow, which is also protected against brute-force attacks. iCloud Keychain escrows a user's keychain data with Apple without allowing Apple to read the passwords and other data it contains. Your keychain is encrypted using a strong passcode, and the escrow service provides a copy of the keychain only if a strict set of conditions is met.

To recover your keychain through iCloud Keychain escrow, authenticate with your Apple ID on a new device, then respond to an SMS [sent to a trusted phone number](#). After you authenticate and respond, you must enter the device passcode. iOS, iPadOS, and macOS allow only 10 attempts to authenticate. After several failed attempts, the record is locked, and you must contact Apple Support on the [Apple Support website](#) to be granted more attempts.

---

## Automatically fill in one-time verification codes on iPhone

Some websites and apps offer two-factor authentication (also known as *multifactor authentication*), which helps prevent other people from accessing your accounts even if they know your passwords. Passwords are the first authentication factor, and temporary, one-time verification codes are commonly a second factor. iPhone can automatically generate these verification codes without your reliance on SMS messages or additional apps.

---

### Set up automatic verification codes for a website or app by scanning a QR code

If you have another device with a screen, like a computer or iPad, you can use it to display a QR code from a website or app, then use the iPhone camera to scan the code.

1. On your other device, sign in to the area of the website or app where you manage your account, then select options to enable two-factor authentication and an authenticator app.

A QR code appears to help you set up an authenticator app.

2. On iPhone, use the camera to scan the QR code.
3. On iPhone, select your account for the website or app.


A verification code appears below the User Name and Password fields.

4. On your other device, enter the verification code that appears on your iPhone.

---

### Set up automatic verification codes for a website or app by entering a setup key


If you can't scan a QR code from another screen, you can manually enter a setup key.

1. Sign in to the area of the website or app where you manage your account, then select options to enable two-factor authentication and an authenticator app.
2. Choose the option to manually use a setup key (or setup code or similar), then [select and copy](#) the setup key.
3. Go to Settings  > Passwords, then select your account for the website or app.
4. Tap Set Up Verification Code, then tap Enter Setup Key.
5. Tap the Setup Key field, tap Paste, then tap OK.
6. Tap the Verification Code field, then tap Copy Verification Code.

7. Return to the website or app, then [paste](#) the verification code where directed.
- 

### Use a verification code on a website or in an app

1. Sign in to the website or app.
2. If prompted, select the option to use an authenticator app.
3. When asked for a verification code, tap the suggestion that appears above the keyboard.

If no suggestion appears, go to Settings  > Passwords, select your account for the website or app, tap the verification code, then tap Copy Verification Code. Return to the website or app, then [paste](#) the verification code into the field.

---

### Automatically delete one-time verification codes

One-time verification codes are filled in automatically, so you don't need to leave the app or website you're signing into. You can choose to automatically delete the verification codes after entering them with Autofill, or keep them.

1. Go to Settings, then tap Passwords.
  2. Tap Password Options, then turn Clean Up Automatically on or off.
- 

## Automatically fill in SMS passcodes on iPhone


When you sign in to some websites and apps, a one-time SMS passcode is sent to your iPhone. As a security measure, you're required to enter the code into the website or app. iPhone can detect the passcode in Messages and display it above the keyboard.

To use the passcode, tap it.

*Note:* With Continuity, all the SMS and MMS messages you send and receive on iPhone can also appear on your other iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch devices and your Mac. See the Apple Support article [Use Continuity to connect your Mac, iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, and Apple Watch](#).

## Sign in with fewer CAPTCHA challenges on iPhone

Some website and app sign-in screens require you to pass CAPTCHA challenges, such as recognizing letters in unusual shapes. iCloud allows you to bypass many challenges by automatically and privately verifying your iPhone and account. You can turn this bypass on or off.

Go to Settings  > [your name] > Sign-In & Security, then turn Automatic Verification on or off.

## Use two-factor authentication for your Apple ID on iPhone


Using two-factor authentication helps prevent others from accessing your Apple ID account, even if they know your Apple ID password. When it's on, you need both your Apple ID password and a six-digit verification code to sign into your Apple ID account. The verification code is sent to the phone number associated with your Apple ID, or displayed on your trusted devices.

Two-factor authentication for Apple ID is available in iOS 17, iPadOS 17, OS X 13, or later.

*Note:* Certain account types might not support two-factor authentication. Two-factor authentication isn't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article [Availability of two-factor authentication for Apple ID](#).

---

### Turn on two-factor authentication

1. On your iPhone go to Settings  > [your name] > Sign-In & Security.
2. Tap Turn On Two-Factor Authentication, then tap Continue.
3. Enter a *trusted phone number* (the number you'll use to receive verification codes), then tap Next.

A verification code is sent to your trusted phone number.

4. Enter the verification code on your iPhone.

Two-factor authentication is turned on for your Apple ID, and your iPhone is now a trusted device.

---

### Add another trusted device

After you turn on two-factor authentication on your iPhone, you can add other trusted devices to your Apple ID account.

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

1. On the device you want to add, sign in with the same Apple ID you used to turn on two-factor authentication.
2. When prompted, enter the six-digit verification code that appears on your iPhone, another trusted device, a trusted phone number, or your Mac.
3. Enter the verification code on the new device.



You won't be asked for a verification code again unless you sign out completely, erase your device, sign in to your Apple ID account page in a web browser, or need to change your Apple ID password for security reasons.

*Note:* A trusted device must use iOS 17, iPadOS 17, or OS X 13 (or later).

---

### Add or remove a trusted phone number

Adding trusted phone numbers can be useful if you want to use two-factor authentication but don't have access to the phone number you added when you turned it on.

1. Go to Settings  > [your name] > Sign-In & Security, then tap Two-Factor Authentication.
2. Tap Edit (above the list of trusted phone numbers), then enter your device passcode when prompted.
3. Do one of the following:
  - *Add a number:* Tap Add a Trusted Phone Number, then enter the phone number.
  - *Remove a number:* Tap  next to the phone number.
4. When you're finished making changes, tap Done.

Trusted phone numbers don't automatically receive verification codes. If you can't access any trusted devices when setting up a new device for two-factor authentication, tap "Didn't get a verification code?" on the new device, then choose one of your trusted phone numbers to receive the verification code.

## View or remove trusted devices

1. Go to Settings  > [your name].

A list of the devices associated with your Apple ID appears near the bottom of the screen.

2. To remove a device, tap it, then tap Remove from Account.

If you remove a trusted device, it can no longer display verification codes and its access to iCloud (and other Apple services on the device) is blocked. To add it back, use two-factor authentication to sign in to your Apple ID again.

---

## Generate a password for an app that signs in to your Apple ID account

To sign in to your Apple ID account from a third-party app or service (such as an email, contacts, or calendar app) using two-factor authentication, you need to generate an app-specific password.

1. Sign in to your [Apple ID account](#).
2. Tap App-Specific Passwords, then tap "Generate an app-specific password."
3. Follow the onscreen instructions.

After you generate your app-specific password, enter or paste it into the password field of the app as you would normally.

For more information, see the Apple Support article [Using app-specific passwords](#).

---

# Use security keys to sign in to your Apple ID account on iPhone

## About security keys

Security Keys for Apple ID is an optional security feature designed for people (such as celebrities, journalists, and members of government) who want extra protection from targeted attacks on their account, including phishing and social engineering scams.

A security key is a small third-party hardware device that you can connect to your iPhone and use to verify your identity when signing in to your Apple ID account. The physical key replaces the six-digit verification codes normally used in two-factor authentication, which keeps this information from being intercepted or requested by an attacker.

For details about security key requirements, see the Apple Support article [About security keys for Apple ID](#).






---

## Set up security keys

You need to set up at least two security keys so you can use one of them as a backup in case the other one is lost, damaged, or stolen. You can pair up to six keys with your account.

1. Go to Settings  > [your name] > Sign-In & Security, then tap Two-Factor Authentication.
2. Tap Security Keys, then tap Add Security Keys and follow the onscreen instructions.

---


## Sign in to a device, website, or app using a security key

1. When prompted, insert your security key (if it's an NFC key, hold or place it near the top of your iPhone).
2. Follow the onscreen instructions.

---

## Use a security key to reset your Apple ID password

If you forget your Apple ID password, you can use a security key that's paired with your account to reset it.

1. Go to Settings  > [your name] > Sign-In & Security. (If you aren't already signed into your Apple ID account on your iPhone, first use your paired security key to sign in.)
2. Tap Change Password, then follow the onscreen instructions.

---

## Use a security key to unlock your Apple ID

If you try unsuccessfully six times in a row to sign in to your Apple ID account, or if your iPhone detects other signs of suspicious activity, you'll receive an onscreen notification that your Apple ID is locked. You can use your security key to unlock it.


1. Tap Unlock Account, then follow the onscreen instructions to unlock your Apple ID.
2. If you think your account might have been locked because someone else knows your password, tap Change Password and enter a new one.
3. Tap Done.

---

## Remove security keys

You can pair up to six security keys with your Apple ID. If you reach the limit and need to pair additional keys, you can remove one or more of your paired keys. You can replace keys you've removed at any time.

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

1. Go to Settings  > [your name] > Sign-In & Security.
2. Tap Security Keys.
3. To remove all keys, tap Remove All Keys, then tap Remove.

To remove individual keys, tap the ones you want to remove, then tap Remove Key.

*Note:* If you remove all security keys from a device, the device reverts to using six-digit verification codes for two-factor authentication.


---

# Manage what you share with people and apps

## Manage information sharing with Safety Check on iPhone

Use Safety Check to periodically review and update information you share with people, apps, and devices. From Safety Check, you can stop sharing your location with others in Find My, remove others' access to shared content like Photos, Notes, and Calendar, reset system privacy permissions for apps, restrict Messages and FaceTime to the device in your hand, and more.



1. Go to Settings  > Privacy & Security > Safety Check.
2. Tap Manage Sharing & Access, tap Continue, then follow the onscreen instructions.

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL



**Important:** In an emergency, you can also use Safety Check to quickly reset access to your device and personal information. Go to Settings > Privacy & Security > Safety Check, tap Emergency Reset, tap Start Emergency Reset, then follow the onscreen instructions.

To learn more about Safety Check, see [How Safety Check on iPhone works to keep you safe](#) in the Personal Safety User Guide.

**Important:** You might also be sharing information that Safety Check can't review or change—for example, accounts and passwords, social media sharing, and information shared from another device. To learn more about reducing the information you share, see [Additional considerations when using Safety Check](#) in the Personal Safety User Guide.

## Control app tracking permissions on iPhone

All apps are required to ask your permission before tracking you or your iPhone across websites or apps owned by other companies for advertising or to share your information with data brokers. After you grant or deny permission to an app, you can change permission later. You can also stop all apps from requesting permission.

---

### Review or change an app's permission to track you

1. Go to Settings  > Privacy & Security > Tracking.

The list shows the apps that requested permission to track you. You can turn permission on or off for any app on the list.


2. To stop all apps from asking permission to track you, turn off Allow Apps to Request to Track (at the top of the screen).

---

For more information about app tracking, tap Learn More near the top of the screen.

## Control the location information you share on iPhone

You control whether iPhone and apps have information about your location.

To figure out where you are when getting directions, setting up meetings, and more, Location Services uses information (when available) from GPS networks, your Bluetooth® connections, your local Wi-Fi networks, and your cellular network. When an app is using Location Services,  appears in the status bar.


When you set up iPhone, you're asked if you want to turn on Location Services. Afterward, you can turn Location Services on or off at any time.

The first time an app wants location data from your iPhone, you receive a request with an explanation. Some apps may make a one-time only request for your location. Other apps may ask you to share your location now and in the future. Whether you grant or deny ongoing access to your location, you can change an app's access later.



---

### Turn on Location Services

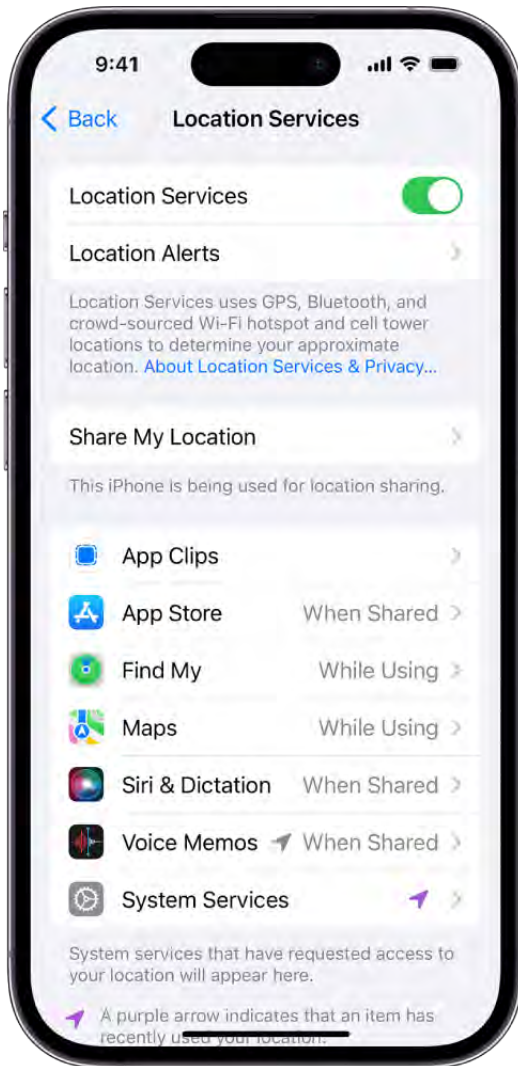
If you didn't turn on Location Services when you first set up iPhone, go to Settings  > Privacy & Security > Location Services, then turn on Location Services.

**Important:** If you turn off Location Services, many important iPhone features stop working.

---

## Review or change an app's ongoing access to location information

1. Go to Settings  > Privacy & Security > Location Services.



2. To review or change access settings for an app or to see its explanation for requesting Location Services, tap the app.


To allow an app to use your specific location, leave Precise Location turned on. To share only your approximate location—which may be sufficient for an app that doesn't need your exact location—turn Precise Location off.

*Note:* If you set the access for an app to Ask Next Time, you're asked to turn on Location Services again the next time an app tries to use it.

To understand how a third-party app uses the information it's requesting, review its terms and privacy policy. See the Apple Support article [About privacy and Location Services](#).

## Hide the map in Location Services alerts

When you allow an app to always use your location in the background, you may receive alerts about the app's use of that information. (These alerts let you change your permission, if you want to.) In the alerts, a map shows locations recently accessed by the app.



To hide the map, go to Settings  > Privacy & Security > Location Services > Location Alerts, then turn off Show Map in Location Alerts.

With the setting off, you continue to receive location alerts, but the map isn't shown.

---

## Review or change Location Services settings for system services

Several system services, such as location-based suggestions and location-based ads, use Location Services.

To see the status for each service, to turn Location Services on or off for each service, or to show  in the status bar when enabled system services use your location, go to Settings  > Privacy & Security > Location Services > System Services.

---


## Control access to information in apps on iPhone

You control whether third-party apps have access to information in Contacts, Photos, Calendar, and other apps.

---

### Review or change access to information in apps

The first time an app wants to use information from another app, you receive a request with an explanation. For example, a messaging app may request access to your contacts to find friends who are using the same app. After you grant or deny access, you can change access later.

1. Go to Settings  > Privacy & Security.
2. Tap a category of information, such as Calendars, Reminders, or Motion & Fitness.

A list appears showing the apps that requested access. You can turn access on or off for any app on the list.

---

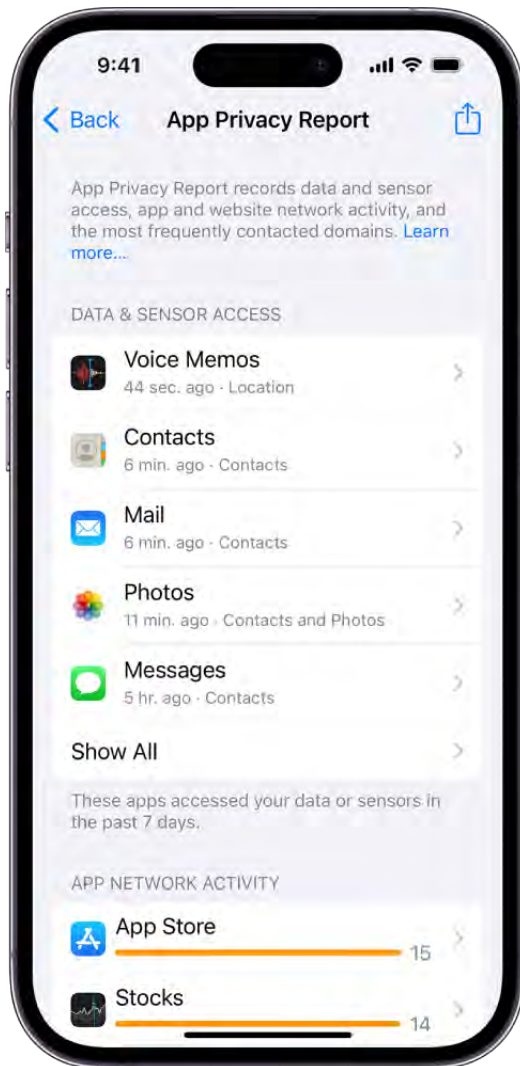
### Review how apps are using the permissions you grant them


Go to Settings  > Privacy & Security, then tap App Privacy Report.



DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

The App Privacy Report shows you how apps are using the permissions you granted them and shows you their network activity.



To turn off the report and delete its data, go to Settings  > Privacy & Security > App Privacy Report, then tap Turn Off App Privacy Report. You can return to this Settings screen to turn the report on again.

---

## Control how Apple delivers advertising to you on iPhone

You control how Apple delivers advertising.


Ads delivered by Apple may appear in the App Store, Apple News, and Stocks. These ads don't access data from any other apps. In the App Store and Apple News, your search and download history may be used to serve you relevant search ads. In Apple News and Stocks, ads are served based partly on what you read or follow. This includes publishers you've enabled notifications for and the type of publishing subscription you have. The

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

articles you read are not used to serve targeted ads to you outside these apps, and information collected about what you read is linked to a random identifier rather than your Apple ID.

---


### **Review the information Apple uses to deliver ads**

Go to Settings  > Privacy & Security > Apple Advertising > View Ad Targeting Information.

The information is used by Apple to deliver more relevant ads in the App Store, Apple News, and Stocks. Your personal data isn't provided to other parties.

---

### **Turn personalized ads on or off**

Go to Settings  > Privacy & Security > Apple Advertising, then turn Personalized Ads on or off.

*Note:* Turning off personalized ads limits Apple's ability to deliver relevant ads to you. It may not reduce the number of ads you receive.

---

### **Learn more about privacy and Apple's advertising platform**

Go to Settings  > Privacy & Security > Apple Advertising > About Advertising & Privacy.

---


## **Control access to hardware features on iPhone**

Before apps use the camera or microphone on your iPhone, they're required to request your permission and explain why they're asking. For example, a social networking app may ask to use your camera so that you can take and upload pictures to that app. Apps are similarly required to request your permission to use various other hardware features, including Bluetooth® connectivity, motion and fitness sensors, and devices on your local network.

You can review which apps have requested access to these hardware features, and you can change their access at your discretion.

---

### **Review or change access to the camera, microphone, and other hardware features**

1. Go to Settings  > Privacy & Security.
2. Tap a hardware feature, such as Camera, Bluetooth®, Local Network, or Microphone.

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL


The list shows the apps that requested access. You can turn access on or off for any app on the list.

*Note:* Whenever an app uses the camera (including when the camera and microphone are used together), a green indicator appears. An orange indicator appears at the top of the screen whenever an app uses the microphone without the camera. Also, a message appears at the top of Control Center to inform you when an app has recently used either.



# Create and manage Hide My Email addresses in Settings on iPhone

When you [subscribe to iCloud+](#), you can use Hide My Email to keep your personal email address private. With Hide My Email, you can generate unique, random email addresses that forward to your personal email account, so you don't have to share your real email address when filling out forms or signing up for newsletters on the web, or when sending email.

You can create and manage Hide My Email addresses in Settings . Go to Settings > [your name] > iCloud > Hide My Email, then do any of the following:

- *Create a Hide My Email address:* Tap Create New Address, then follow the onscreen instructions.
- *Deactivate a Hide My Email address:* Tap an address (below Create New Address), then tap Deactivate Email Address. After you deactivate the address, it no longer forwards emails to you.
- *Change which personal email address to forward to:* Tap Forward To, then choose an email address. Options consist of addresses that are available with your Apple ID.
- *Copy a forwarding address to use elsewhere:* Tap an address (below Create New Address), touch and hold the Hide My Email section, then tap Copy. To immediately use that address elsewhere, touch and hold in a text field, then tap Paste.

You can also generate Hide My Email addresses in Safari and Mail wherever email addresses are required. See [Use Hide My Email in Safari on iPhone](#) and [Use Hide My Email in Mail on iPhone](#). In supporting apps, you can also generate a Hide My Email address when an email address is required by tapping the email address field, then tapping Hide My Email above the keyboard.

# Protect your web browsing with iCloud Private Relay on iPhone


When you [subscribe to iCloud+](#), you can use iCloud Private Relay to help prevent websites and network providers from creating a detailed profile about you. When iCloud Private Relay is on, the traffic leaving your iPhone is encrypted and sent through two separate internet relays. This prevents websites from seeing your IP address and exact location while preventing network providers from collecting your browsing activity in Safari.



*Note:* iCloud Private Relay isn't available in all countries or regions. For more information, see the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).

---


## Turn iCloud Private Relay on

Go to Settings  > [your name] > iCloud > Private Relay, then tap Private Relay.

*Note:* You need to turn on iCloud Private Relay on each device where you want to use it.

---

## Turn iCloud Private Relay off

1. Go to Settings  > [your name] > iCloud > Private Relay, then tap Private Relay.
2. Do one of the following:
  - *Turn off iCloud Private Relay temporarily:* Tap Turn Off Until Tomorrow.


Within 24 hours, iCloud Private Relay will turn back on automatically. If you want it to resume sooner, follow the instructions for turning it on at any time.

- *Turn off iCloud Private Relay completely:* Tap Turn Off Private Relay.

For information about turning off iCloud Private Relay temporarily for a specific website, see [Temporarily allow a website to see your IP address](#).

---


## Turn iCloud Private Relay on or off for a Wi-Fi network

1. Go to Settings  > Wi-Fi.
2. Tap , then turn Limit IP Address Tracking on or off.

If you turn off Limit IP Address Tracking for a Wi-Fi network on your iPhone, iCloud Private Relay is turned off for this network across all your devices where you're signed in with the same Apple ID.

---

## Turn iCloud Private Relay on or off for a cellular network

1. Go to Settings  > Cellular, then do one of the following:
  - *If your iPhone has a single line:* Tap Cellular Data Options.
  - *If your iPhone has multiple lines:* Select a line (below SIMs).
2. Turn Limit IP Address Tracking on or off.

The network setting is specific to a physical SIM or eSim in your iPhone (eSIM not available in all countries or regions). See [View or change cellular data settings on iPhone](#).

---

## Set the specificity of your IP address location

Go to Settings  > [your name] > iCloud > Private Relay > IP Address Location, then choose one of the following:

- Maintain General Location (for example, to see local content in Safari)
  - Use Country and Time Zone (to make your location more obscure)
-

---



## Use a private network address on iPhone

To help protect your privacy, your iPhone uses a unique private network address, called a *media access control (MAC) address*, on each Wi-Fi network it joins.

If a network can't use a private address (for example, to provide parental controls or to identify your iPhone as authorized to join), you can stop using a private address for that network.

---

### Turn a private address off for a network

1. Go to Settings  > Wi-Fi, then tap  for a network.
2. Turn Private Address off.

**Important:** For better privacy, leave Private Address turned on for all networks that support it. Using a private address helps reduce tracking of your iPhone across different Wi-Fi networks.

---

## Use Advanced Data Protection for your iCloud data

By default, iCloud secures your information by encrypting it when it's in transit, storing it in an encrypted format, and securing your encryption keys in Apple data centers. In addition, many Apple services use end-to-end encryption; your information is encrypted using keys derived from your devices and your device passcode, which only you know.

For the highest level of cloud data security, you can turn on Advanced Data Protection (iOS 16.2 or later required). It uses end-to-end encryption on more data categories such as the following:

- Device backup
- Messages backup
- iCloud Drive
- Notes
- Photos

- Reminders
- Safari bookmarks
- Siri Shortcuts
- Voice Memos
- Wallet passes

With Advanced Data Protection, your protected data can be decrypted only on your trusted devices, protecting your information even in the case of a data breach in the cloud. Not even Apple can access your information.

For detailed information about the requirements for using Advanced Data Protection, see the Apple Support article [How to turn on Advanced Data Protection for iCloud](#).

---

### Turn on Advanced Data Protection

1. Go to Settings > [your name] > iCloud, then tap Advanced Data Protection.
2. Tap Turn On Advanced Data Protection.
3. If you haven't set up a Recovery Contact or Recovery Key, tap Account Recovery, tap Set Up Account Recovery, then follow the onscreen instructions.

**WARNING:** If you use Advanced Data Protection, you're responsible for your data recovery. Because Apple won't have the keys required to recover your data, you'll need to have a Recovery Contact or Recovery Key set up on your account. You can use these additional recovery methods to regain access to your data if you ever forget your password or lose access to your account.

If you choose to turn off Advanced Data Protection later, your iCloud data will revert to the standard level of security.

---

## Harden your iPhone from a cyberattack with Lockdown Mode

Lockdown Mode is an extreme protection feature for iPhone. Its protections include safer wireless connectivity defaults, media handling, media sharing defaults, sandboxing, and network security optimizations.



DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

Lockdown Mode is optional and should be used only if you believe you might be targeted by a highly sophisticated cyberattack, such as by a private company developing state-sponsored mercenary spyware.

**Important:** Most people are never targeted by attacks of this nature.


When iPhone is in Lockdown Mode, it doesn't function as it typically does. Apps, websites, and features are strictly limited for security, and some functionality isn't available, including:

- SharePlay
- Shared Albums
- FaceTime Live Photos
- FaceTime Continuity Handoff

In addition, your iPhone must be unlocked to connect with wired accessories. (Some connections are permitted for a short time after going into Lockdown Mode.)

---

### Turn on Lockdown Mode


Go to Settings  > Privacy & Security > Lockdown Mode, then tap Turn On Lockdown Mode.

If you've set up an Apple Watch with your iPhone, turning on Lockdown Mode also turns it on for the paired Apple Watch.

**Important:** For complete protection, all of your devices must have Lockdown Mode turned on.

---

### Learn about Lockdown Mode


Go to Settings  > Privacy & Security > Lockdown Mode, then tap Learn More.

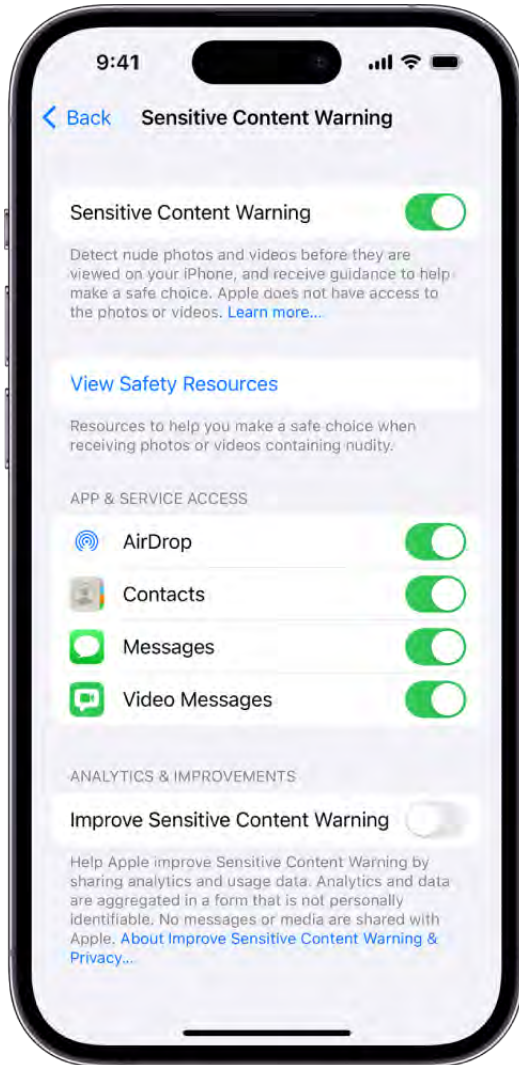
---

## Receive warnings about sensitive content on iPhone

You can have your iPhone (or your family member's iPhone) check for sensitive images and warn you before they're sent or received.

## Turn on Sensitive Content Warning

1. Go to Settings  > Privacy & Security.
2. Scroll down and tap Sensitive Content Warning, then turn on Sensitive Content Warning.



You (or your family member) will receive a warning before receiving or sending sexually explicit photos.


*Note:* Sensitive Content Warning is turned on automatically if you set up Screen Time and turn on Communication Safety > Check for Sensitive Photos. See [Check for sensitive images in Messages and AirDrop on a family member's iPhone](#).

In Screen Time, you can also block inappropriate content and set restrictions on purchases. See [Allow or block communication on a family member's device](#).

---

# Restart, update, reset, and restore

## Turn iPhone on or off

Use the side button to turn on iPhone. You can use the side button (along with either volume button on some models) or Settings  to turn off iPhone.

If your iPhone isn't working as expected, you can try restarting it by turning it off, then turning it back on. If turning it off and on doesn't fix the issue, try [forcing it to restart](#).

---

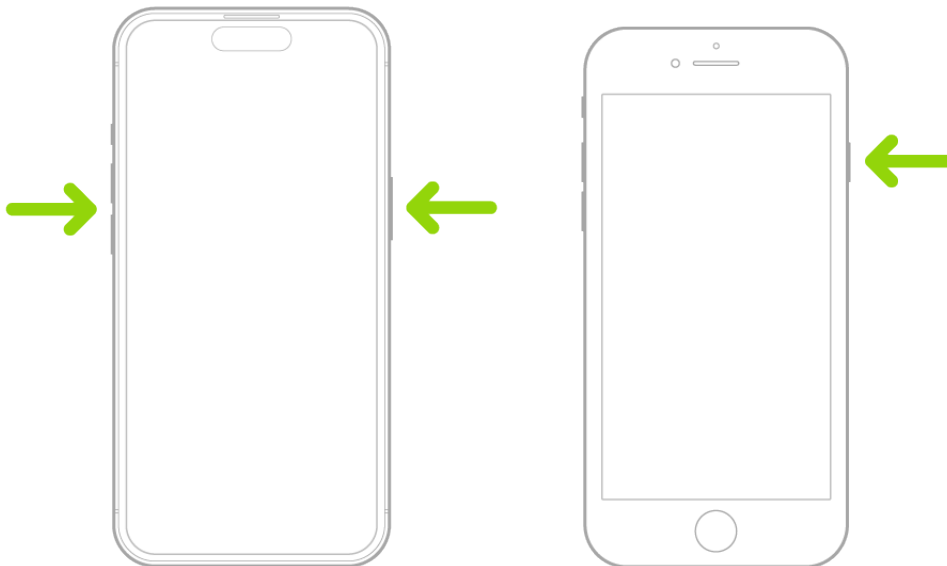
### Turn on iPhone

Press and hold the side button until the Apple logo appears.

---

### Turn off iPhone

- *iPhone with Face ID:* Simultaneously press and hold the side button and either volume button until the sliders appear, then drag the Power Off slider.
- *iPhone with the Home button:* Press and hold the side button, then drag the slider.



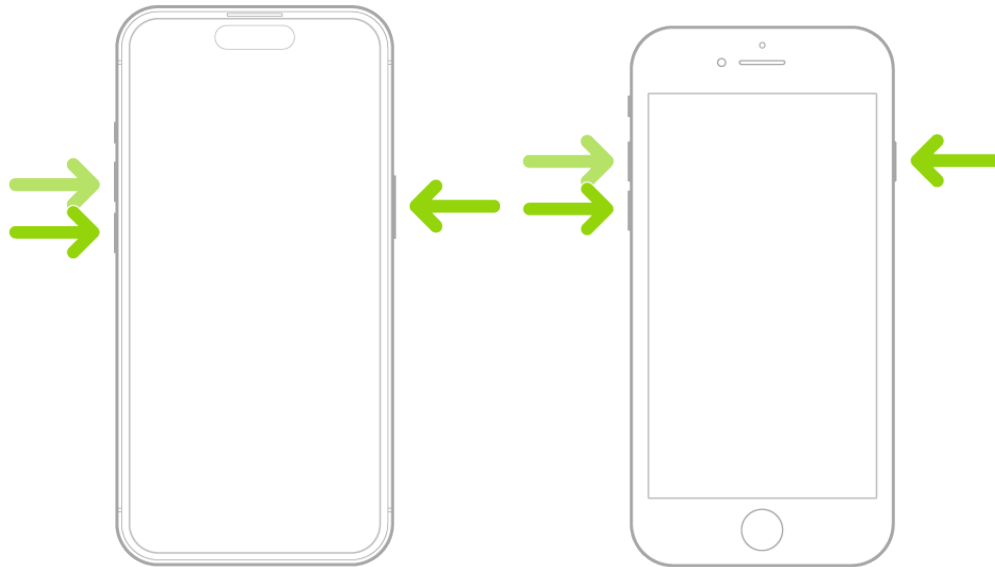
- *All models:* Go to Settings  > General > Shut Down, then drag the slider.

## Force restart iPhone

If iPhone isn't responding, and you can't [turn it off then on](#), try forcing it to restart.

---

1. Press and quickly release the volume up button.
  2. Press and quickly release the volume down button.
  3. Press and hold the side button.
  4. When the Apple logo appears, release the side button.
- 



*Note:* For force restart instructions for iPhone 7, iPhone 6s, or iPhone SE (1st generation)—models that don't support iOS 16 or later—see the [iOS 15 version](#) of this page.

If iPhone doesn't restart after you try these steps, see the Apple Support article [If your iPhone won't turn on or is frozen](#). Or if your iPhone isn't working as expected after you restart it, see the [iPhone Support website](#).

## Update iOS on iPhone


When you update to the latest version of iOS, your data and settings remain unchanged.

Before you update, set up iPhone to [back up](#) automatically, or back up your device manually.

---

## Update iPhone automatically

If you didn't turn on automatic updates when you first set up your iPhone, do the following:


1. Go to Settings  > General > Software Update > Automatic Updates.
2. Turn on Download iOS Updates and Install iOS Updates.

When an update is available, iPhone downloads and installs the update overnight while charging and connected to Wi-Fi. You're notified before an update is installed.

---

## Update iPhone manually

At any time, you can check for and install software updates.

Go to Settings  > General > Software Update.

The screen shows the currently installed version of iOS and whether an update is available.

To turn off automatic updates, go to Settings > General > Software Update > Automatic Updates.

---

## Update using your computer

1. [Connect iPhone and your computer with a cable.](#)
2. Do one of the following:
  - *On a Mac (macOS 10.15 or later):* In the Finder sidebar, select your iPhone, then click General at the top of the window.
  - *On a Mac (macOS 10.14 or earlier) or a Windows PC:* Open the iTunes app, click the button resembling an iPhone near the top left of the iTunes window, then click Summary.

*Note:* Use the latest version of iTunes. See the Apple Support article [Update to the latest version of iTunes.](#)

3. Click Check for Update.
  4. To install an available update, click Update.
-

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

See the Apple Support articles [Update to the latest iOS](#) and [If you can't update or restore your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch](#).


## Back up iPhone

You can back up iPhone using iCloud or your computer. To decide which method is best for you, see [About backups for iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch](#).

**Tip:** If you replace your iPhone, you can use its backup to transfer your information to the new device. See [Restore all content to iPhone from a backup](#).

---

### Back up iPhone using iCloud

1. Go to Settings  > [your name] > iCloud > iCloud Backup.
2. Turn on iCloud Backup.

iCloud automatically backs up your iPhone daily when iPhone is connected to power, locked, and connected to Wi-Fi.

*Note:* On models that support 5G, your carrier may give you the option to back up iPhone using your cellular network. Go to Settings > [your name] > iCloud > iCloud Backup, then turn on or off Backup Over Cellular.

3. To perform a manual backup, tap Back Up Now.

To view your iCloud backups, go to Settings > [your name] > iCloud > Manage Account Storage > Backups. To delete a backup, choose a backup from the list, then tap Delete & Turn Off Backup.

*Note:* If you turn on an app or feature to use iCloud syncing (in Settings > [your name] > iCloud > Show All), its information is stored in iCloud. Because the information is automatically kept up to date on all your devices, it's not included in your iCloud backup. (See the Apple Support article [What does iCloud back up?](#))

## Back up iPhone using your Mac

1. [Connect iPhone and your computer with a cable.](#)
2. In the Finder sidebar on your Mac, select your iPhone.

To use the Finder to back up iPhone, macOS 10.15 or later is required. With earlier versions of macOS, [use iTunes](#) to back up iPhone.

3. At the top of the Finder window, click General.
4. Select "Back up all of the data on your iPhone to this Mac."
5. To encrypt your backup data and protect it with a password, select "Encrypt local backup."
6. Click Back Up Now.

*Note:* You can also connect iPhone to your computer wirelessly if you [set up syncing over Wi-Fi](#).

---

## Back up iPhone using your Windows PC

1. [Connect iPhone and your computer with a cable.](#)
2. In the iTunes app on your PC, click the iPhone button near the top left of the iTunes window.
3. Click Summary.
4. Click Back Up Now (below Backups).
5. To encrypt your backups, select "Encrypt local backup," type a password, then click Set Password.

To see the backups stored on your computer, choose Edit > Preferences, then click Devices. Encrypted backups have a lock icon in the list of backups.

*Note:* You can also connect iPhone to your computer wirelessly if you [set up syncing over Wi-Fi](#).


---

## Return iPhone settings to their defaults

You can return settings to their defaults without erasing your content.

If you want to save your settings, [back up](#) iPhone before returning them to their defaults. For example, if you're trying to solve a problem but returning settings to their defaults doesn't help, you might want to restore your previous settings from a backup.

---

1. Go to Settings  > General > Transfer or Reset iPhone > Reset.
2. Choose an option:

**WARNING:** If you choose the Erase All Content and Settings option, all of your content is removed. See [Erase iPhone](#).

- *Reset All Settings:* All settings—including network settings, the keyboard dictionary, location settings, privacy settings, and Apple Pay cards—are removed or reset to their defaults. No data or media are deleted.
- *Reset Network Settings:* All network settings are removed. In addition, the device name assigned in Settings > General > About is reset to "iPhone," and manually trusted certificates (such as for websites) are changed to untrusted.

Cellular data roaming may also be turned off. (See [View or change cellular data settings on iPhone](#).)

When you reset network settings, previously used networks and VPN settings that weren't installed by a configuration profile or mobile device management (MDM) are removed. Wi-Fi is turned off and then back on, disconnecting you from any network you're on. The Wi-Fi and Ask to Join Networks settings remain turned on.

To remove VPN settings installed by a configuration profile, go to Settings > General > VPN & Device Management, select the configuration profile, then tap Remove Profile. This also removes other settings and accounts provided by the profile. See [Install or remove configuration profiles on iPhone](#).

To remove network settings installed by MDM, go to Settings > General > VPN & Device Management, select the management, then tap Remove Management. This also removes other settings and certificates provided by MDM. See "Mobile device management (MDM)" in the [Deployment Reference for iPhone and iPad](#).

- *Reset Keyboard Dictionary:* You add words to the keyboard dictionary by rejecting words iPhone suggests as you type. Resetting the keyboard dictionary erases only the words you've added.
- *Reset Home Screen Layout:* Returns the built-in apps to their original layout on the Home Screen.



- *Reset Location & Privacy*: Resets the location services and privacy settings to their defaults.
- 

If you want to completely erase your iPhone, see [Use Settings to erase iPhone](#). If you want or need to use a computer to erase your iPhone, see [Use a computer to erase iPhone](#).

## Restore all content to iPhone from a backup

You can restore content, settings, and apps from a backup to a new or newly erased iPhone.

**Important:** You must first create a backup of your iPhone. See [Back up iPhone](#).

---

### Restore iPhone from an iCloud backup

1. Turn on a new or newly erased iPhone.
2. Do one of the following:
  - Tap Set Up Manually, tap Restore from iCloud Backup, then follow the onscreen instructions.
  - If you have another iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch with iOS 11, iPadOS 13, or later, you can use Quick Start to automatically set up your new device. Bring the two devices close together, then follow the onscreen instructions to securely copy many of your settings, preferences, and iCloud Keychain. You can then restore the rest of your data and content to your new device from your iCloud backup.

Or, if both devices have iOS 12.4, iPadOS 13, or later, you can transfer all your data wirelessly from your previous device to your new one. Keep your devices near each other and plugged into power until the migration process is complete.

You're asked for your Apple ID. If you've forgotten your Apple ID, see the [Recover your Apple ID website](#).

---

## Restore iPhone from a computer backup

1. [Using USB](#), connect a new or newly erased iPhone to the computer containing your backup.
2. Do one of the following:
  - *On a Mac (macOS 10.15 or later):* In the Finder sidebar, select your iPhone, click Trust, then click "Restore from this backup."
  - *On a Mac (macOS 10.14 or earlier) or a Windows PC:* Open the iTunes app, click the button resembling an iPhone near the top left of the iTunes window, click Summary, then click Restore Backup.

*Note:* Use the latest version of iTunes. See the Apple Support article [Update to the latest version of iTunes](#).

3. Choose your backup from the list, then click Continue.

If your backup is encrypted, you must enter the password before restoring your files and settings.

---

See the Apple Support articles [Restore your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch from a backup](#) and [If you can't update or restore your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch](#).

## Restore purchased and deleted items to iPhone

You can redownload items purchased from the App Store, Book Store, Apple TV app, and iTunes Store without repurchasing them. If you're part of a [Family Sharing](#) group, you can download items purchased by other family members, too. To restore purchases that aren't on your iPhone, see the following Apple Support articles:


- [Redownload apps and games from Apple](#)
- [Redownload books and audiobooks](#)
- [Redownload TV shows and movies that you purchased](#)
- [Redownload music](#)

You can also [recover recently deleted email, photos, notes](#), and [voice memos](#).

## Sell, give away, or trade in your iPhone

Before you sell, give away, or trade in your iPhone, see the Apple Support article [What to do before you sell, give away, or trade in your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch](#), and be sure to perform the following tasks:


- If you paired an Apple Watch with your iPhone, unpair your Apple Watch. (See the Apple Support article [Unpair and erase your Apple Watch](#).)
- [Back up iPhone](#). If you replace one iPhone with another, you can [use the setup assistant](#) to restore the backup to your new iPhone.

If you're replacing your iPhone with another one you have on hand, you can use extra free storage in iCloud to move your apps and data from one iPhone to another. Go to Settings  > General > Transfer or Reset iPhone > Get Started, then follow the onscreen instructions.

- Sign out of iCloud and the iTunes & App Store. Go to Settings > *[your name]*, scroll down, tap Sign Out, enter your Apple ID password, then tap Turn Off.
- [Erase all content and settings](#) that contain personal information. If you previously [turned on Find My](#) for your iPhone, Activation Lock is removed when you erase iPhone, making it ready for a new owner.

## Erase iPhone

When you delete data, it no longer appears in apps on iPhone, but it isn't erased from iPhone storage. To permanently remove all of your content and settings from your iPhone, erase (wipe) your iPhone. For example, erase iPhone before you sell it, trade it in, or give it away.

There are two ways to erase iPhone: using Settings  on your iPhone, or connecting iPhone to a computer with a USB cable and using the Finder or iTunes. The Settings method is the easiest. If you're unable to open Settings, you need to connect iPhone to a computer and use the Finder or iTunes.


---

## Before you begin

- If you intend to sell your iPhone, trade it in, or give it away, see the Apple Support article [What to do before you sell, give away, or trade in your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch](#) for steps to take before erasing iPhone.
- To save your content and settings, [back up](#) your iPhone shortly before erasing it or when you're given the option during the erase process. You can use the backup to later restore your data on a new iPhone or iPad.
- Have your iPhone passcode ready. If you don't remember it, see the Apple Support article [If you forgot the passcode on your iPhone, or your iPhone is disabled](#).
- Have your Apple ID password ready. If you don't remember it, see the [Recover your Apple ID website](#).
- If you received your iPhone from someone else and it's still associated with their Apple ID, return it to them and ask them to follow the instructions in the Apple Support article [What to do before you sell, give away, or trade in your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch](#). Otherwise, you won't be able to erase it.

---

## Use Settings to erase iPhone

1. Go to Settings  > General > Transfer or Reset iPhone.
2. Do one of the following:
  - *Prepare your content and settings to transfer to a new iPhone:* Tap Get Started, then follow the onscreen instructions. When you finish, return to Settings > General > Transfer or Reset iPhone, then tap Erase All Content and Settings.
  - *Erase all of your data from iPhone:* Tap Erase All Content and Settings.

---

## Use a computer to erase iPhone

You can use a Mac or Windows PC to erase all data and settings from your iPhone, restore iPhone to factory settings, and install the latest version of iOS.


1. Connect your iPhone to your computer with a USB or USB-C cable. You may also need an adapter. See [Connect iPhone and your computer with a cable](#).
2. Turn on your iPhone.
3. Do one of the following:

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

- *On a Mac (macOS 10.15 or later):* Click the Finder icon in the Dock to open a Finder window, click the iPhone button in the Finder sidebar (below Locations), click General at the top of the window, then click Restore iPhone.
  - *On a Mac (macOS 10.14 or earlier) or a Windows PC:* Make sure you have the latest version of iTunes (see the Apple Support article [Update to the latest version of iTunes](#)). Open iTunes, click the iPhone button near the top left of the iTunes window, click Summary, then click Restore iPhone.
- 

For troubleshooting steps, see the Apple Support article [If you can't update or restore your iPhone](#).

## Install or remove configuration profiles on iPhone

Configuration profiles define settings for using iPhone with corporate or school networks or accounts. You might be asked to install a configuration profile that was sent to you in an email, or one that's downloaded from a webpage. You're asked for permission to install the profile and, when you open the file, information about what it contains is displayed. You can see the profiles you have installed in Settings  > General > VPN & Device Management. If you delete a profile, all of the settings, apps, and data associated with the profile are also deleted.

# Safety, handling, and support

## Important safety information for iPhone

**WARNING:** Failure to follow these safety instructions could result in fire, electric shock, injury, or damage to iPhone or other property. Read all the safety information below before using iPhone.

**Handling.** Handle iPhone with care. It is made of metal, glass, and plastic and has sensitive electronic components inside. iPhone or its battery can be damaged if dropped, burned, punctured, or crushed, or if it comes in contact with liquid. If you suspect damage to iPhone or the battery, discontinue use of iPhone, as it may cause overheating or injury. Don't use iPhone with cracked glass, as it may cause injury. If you're concerned about scratching the surface of iPhone, consider using a case or cover.

**Repairing.** iPhone should only be serviced by a trained technician. Disassembling iPhone may damage it, result in loss of splash and water resistance (supported models), or cause injury to you. If iPhone is damaged or malfunctions, you should contact Apple, or an Apple Authorized Service Provider for service. Repairs performed by untrained individuals or using non-genuine Apple parts may affect the safety and functionality of the device. You can find more information about repairs and service at the [iPhone Repair website](#).

**Battery.** An iPhone battery should only be repaired by a trained technician to avoid battery damage, which could cause overheating, fire, or injury. Batteries should be recycled or disposed of separately from household waste and according to local environmental laws and guidelines. For information about battery service and recycling, see the [Battery Service and Recycling website](#).

**Lasers.** The proximity sensor in iPhone 7 and later, the TrueDepth camera system, and the LiDAR Scanner contain one or more lasers. These laser systems may be disabled for safety reasons if the device is damaged or malfunctions. If you receive a notification on your iPhone that the laser system is disabled, you should contact Apple or an Apple Authorized Service Provider for service. Improper repair, modification, or use of non-genuine Apple components in the laser systems may prevent the safety mechanisms from functioning properly, and could cause hazardous exposure and injury to eyes or skin.

**Distraction.** Using iPhone in some circumstances may distract you and might cause a dangerous situation (for example, avoid using headphones while riding a bicycle and avoid typing a text message while driving a car). Observe rules that prohibit or restrict the use of mobile devices or headphones. For more about safety while driving, see [Stay focused while driving with iPhone](#).

**Navigation.** Maps depends on data services. These data services are subject to change and may not be available in all countries or regions, resulting in maps and location-based information that may be unavailable, inaccurate, or incomplete. Compare the information provided in Maps to your surroundings. Use common sense when navigating. Always observe current road conditions and posted signs to resolve any discrepancies. Some Maps features require Location Services.

**Charging.** To charge iPhone, do any of the following:

- [Charge the iPhone battery](#) using the charging cable (included) and an Apple USB power adapter (sold separately).
- [Place iPhone face up](#) on MagSafe Charger or MagSafe Duo Charger (connected to Apple 20W USB-C power adapter or other compatible power adapter) or [on a Qi-certified charger](#). (MagSafe Charger, MagSafe Duo Charger, power adapters, and Qi-certified chargers are sold separately.)
- [Connect iPhone and your computer with a cable](#).

You can also charge iPhone with “Made for iPhone” or other third-party cables and power adapters that are compliant with USB 2.0 or later and with applicable country regulations and international and regional safety standards. Other adapters may not meet applicable safety standards, and charging with such adapters could pose a risk of death or injury.

Using damaged cables or chargers, or charging when moisture is present, can cause fire, electric shock, injury, or damage to iPhone or other property. When you use the charging cable (included) or a wireless charger (sold separately) to charge iPhone, make sure its USB connector is fully inserted into a compatible power adapter before you plug the adapter into a power outlet. It’s important to keep iPhone, the charging cable, the power adapter, and any wireless charger in a well-ventilated area when in use or charging. When using a wireless charger, remove metallic cases and avoid placing metallic foreign objects on the charger (for example, keys, coins, batteries, or jewelry), as they may become warm or interfere with charging.

**Charging cable and connector.** Avoid prolonged skin contact with the charging cable and connector when the charging cable is connected to a power source because it may cause discomfort or injury. Sleeping or sitting on the charging cable or connector should

be avoided.

**Prolonged heat exposure.** iPhone and Apple USB power adapters (sold separately) comply with required surface temperature limits defined by applicable country regulations and international and regional safety standards. However, even within these limits, sustained contact with warm surfaces for long periods of time may cause discomfort or injury. Use common sense to avoid situations where your skin is in contact with a device, its power adapter, or a wireless charger when it's operating or connected to a power source for long periods of time. For example, don't sleep on a device, power adapter, or wireless charger, or place them under a blanket, pillow, or your body, when it's connected to a power source. Keep your iPhone, the power adapter, and any wireless charger in a well-ventilated area when in use or charging. Take special care if you have a physical condition that affects your ability to detect heat against the body.

**USB power adapter.** (sold separately) To operate an Apple USB power adapter safely and reduce the possibility of heat-related injury or damage, plug the power adapter directly into a power outlet. Don't use the power adapter in wet locations, such as near a sink, bathtub, or shower stall, and don't connect or disconnect the power adapter with wet hands. Stop using the power adapter and any cables if any of the following conditions exist:

- The power adapter plug or prongs are damaged.
- The charge cable becomes frayed or otherwise damaged.
- The power adapter is exposed to excessive moisture, or liquid is spilled into the power adapter.
- The power adapter has been dropped, and its enclosure is damaged.

Apple 20W USB-C power adapter specifications:

- *Frequency:* 50 to 60 Hz, single phase
- *Line voltage:* 100 to 240 V
- *Output Voltage/Current:* 9 VDC/2.2A
- *Minimum Power Output:* 20W
- *Output Port:* USB-C

Apple 18W USB-C power adapter specifications:

- *Frequency:* 50 to 60 Hz, single phase



DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL


- *Line voltage:* 100 to 240 V
- *Output voltage:* 5V/3A or 9V/2A
- *Output Port:* USB-C


Apple 5W USB power adapter specifications:

- *Frequency:* 50 to 60 Hz, single phase
- *Line voltage:* 100 to 240 V
- *Output voltage:* 5V/1A
- *Output Port:* USB

**Hearing loss.** Listening to sound at high volumes may damage your hearing. Background noise, as well as continued exposure to high volume levels, can make sounds seem quieter than they actually are. Turn on audio playback and check the volume before inserting anything in your ear. For information about how to set a maximum volume limit, see [Use audiogram data in Health on iPhone](#). For more information about hearing loss, see the [Sound and Hearing website](#).

**WARNING:** To prevent possible hearing damage, do not listen at high volume levels for long periods.

**Radio frequency exposure.** iPhone uses radio signals to connect to wireless networks. For information about radio frequency (RF) energy resulting from radio signals, and steps you can take to minimize exposure, go to Settings  > General > Legal & Regulatory > RF Exposure, or see the [RF Exposure website](#).

**Radio frequency interference.** Observe signs and notices that prohibit or restrict the use of electronic devices. Although iPhone is designed, tested, and manufactured to comply with regulations governing radio frequency emissions, such emissions from iPhone can negatively affect the operation of other electronic equipment, causing them to malfunction. When use is prohibited, such as while traveling in aircraft, or when asked to do so by authorities, turn off iPhone, or [use airplane mode](#) or Settings  > Wi-Fi and Settings > Bluetooth to turn off the iPhone wireless transmitters.

**Medical device interference.** iPhone and MagSafe accessories contain magnets as well as components and/or radios that emit electromagnetic fields. These magnets and electromagnetic fields might interfere with medical devices.

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

Consult your physician and medical device manufacturer for information specific to your medical device and whether you need to maintain a safe distance of separation between your medical device and iPhone and MagSafe accessories. Manufacturers often provide recommendations on the safe use of their devices around wireless or magnetic products to prevent possible interference. If you suspect iPhone and MagSafe accessories are interfering with your medical device, stop using these products.

Medical devices such as implanted pacemakers and defibrillators may contain sensors that respond to magnets and radios when in close contact. To avoid any potential interactions with these devices, keep your MagSafe compatible iPhone models and MagSafe accessories a safe distance away from your device (more than 6 inches/15 cm, or more than 12 inches/30 cm while wirelessly charging, but consult with your physician and your device manufacturer for specific guidelines).

**Not a medical device.** iPhone is not a medical device and should not be used as a substitute for professional medical judgment. It is not designed or intended for use in the diagnosis of disease or other conditions, or in the cure, mitigation, treatment, or prevention of any condition or disease. Please consult your healthcare provider prior to making any decisions related to your health.

**Medical conditions.** If you have any medical condition or experience symptoms that you believe could be affected by iPhone or flashing lights (for example, seizures, blackouts, eyestrain, or headaches), consult with your physician prior to using iPhone.

**Explosive and other atmospheric conditions.** Charging or using iPhone in any area with a potentially explosive atmosphere, such as areas where the air contains high levels of flammable chemicals, vapors, or particles (such as grain, dust, or metal powders), may be hazardous. Exposing iPhone to environments having high concentrations of industrial chemicals, including near evaporating liquified gasses such as helium, may damage or impair iPhone functionality. Obey all signs and instructions.


**Repetitive motion.** When you perform repetitive activities such as typing, swiping, or playing games on iPhone, you may experience discomfort in your hands, arms, wrists, shoulders, neck, or other parts of your body. If you experience discomfort, stop using iPhone and consult a physician.

**High-consequence activities.** This device is not intended for use where the failure of the device could lead to death, personal injury, or severe environmental damage.

**Choking hazard.** Some iPhone accessories may present a choking hazard to small children. Keep these accessories away from small children.

## Important handling information for iPhone

**Cleaning.** Clean iPhone immediately if it comes in contact with anything that may cause stains, or other damage—for example, dirt or sand, ink, makeup, soap, detergent, acids or acidic foods, or lotions. To clean:

- Disconnect all cables, then do one of the following to turn off iPhone:
  - *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Simultaneously press and hold the side button and either volume button until the sliders appear, then drag the top slider.
  - *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Press and hold the side button, then drag the slider.
  - *All models:* Go to Settings  > General > Shut Down, then drag the slider.
- Use a soft, slightly damp, lint-free cloth—for example, a lens cloth.
- Avoid getting moisture in openings.
- Don't use cleaning products or compressed air.

iPhone has a fingerprint-resistant oleophobic (oil-repellant) coating. This coating wears over time with normal usage. Cleaning products and abrasive materials will further diminish the coating and may scratch iPhone.

**Exposure to liquid and dust.** If liquid splashes on iPhone or dust gets on it, wipe it off with a soft, lint-free cloth (for example, a lens cloth) and ensure that your iPhone is dry and free of dust before opening the SIM tray. Minimize exposing iPhone to soap, detergent, acids or acidic foods, and any liquids—for example, salt water, soapy water, pool water, perfume, insect repellent, lotion, sunscreen, oil, adhesive remover, hair dye, and solvents. If iPhone comes into contact with any of these substances, follow the instructions above in the Cleaning section.

Supported models are splash, water, and dust resistant and were tested under controlled laboratory conditions with a rating of either IP68 or IP67 under IEC standard 60529.

Splash, water, and dust resistance are not permanent conditions and resistance might decrease as a result of normal wear. Liquid damage not covered under warranty. See the Apple Support article [About splash, water, and dust resistance of iPhone 7 and later](#). To prevent liquid damage on iPhone, avoid the following:

- Swimming or bathing with iPhone

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

- Exposing iPhone to pressurized water or high velocity water, such as when showering, water skiing, wake boarding, surfing, jet skiing, and so on
- Using iPhone in a sauna or steam room
- Intentionally submerging iPhone in water
- Operating iPhone outside the suggested temperature ranges or in extremely humid conditions
- Dropping iPhone or subjecting it to other impacts
- Disassembling iPhone, including removing screws

If your iPhone has been exposed to liquid, unplug all cables and do not charge your device until it's completely dry. Using accessories or charging when wet may damage your iPhone. Allow at least 5 hours before charging or connecting a Lightning or USB-C accessory.

To dry iPhone, tap it gently against your hand with the Lightning or USB-C connector facing down to remove excess liquid. Leave the device in a dry area with sufficient airflow. Placing the device in front of a fan blowing cool air directly into the Lightning or USB-C connector may help the drying process.

Do not dry your iPhone using an external heat source or insert a foreign object into the Lightning or USB-C connector such as a cotton swab or a paper towel.

**Using connectors, ports, and buttons.** Never force a connector into a port or apply excessive pressure to a button, because this may cause damage that is not covered under the warranty. If the connector and port don't join with reasonable ease, they probably don't match. Check for obstructions and make sure that the connector matches the port and that you have positioned the connector correctly in relation to the port.

**USB-C or USB-C to Lightning Cables.** Discoloration of the Lightning or USB-C connector after regular use is normal. Dirt, debris, and exposure to moisture may cause discoloration. If your Lightning or USB-C cable or connector becomes warm during use or iPhone won't charge or sync, disconnect it from your computer or power adapter and clean the Lightning or USB-C connector with a soft, dry, lint-free cloth. Do not use liquids or cleaning products when cleaning the Lightning or USB-C connector.

Certain usage patterns can contribute to the fraying or breaking of cables. The included cable, like any other metal wire or cable, is subject to becoming weak or brittle if repeatedly bent in the same spot. Aim for gentle curves instead of angles in the cable.

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

Regularly inspect the cable and connector for any kinks, breaks, bends, or other damage. Should you find any such damage, discontinue use of the cable.

**Operating temperature.** iPhone is designed to work in ambient temperatures between 32° and 95° F (0° and 35° C) and stored in temperatures between -4° and 113° F (-20° and 45° C). iPhone can be damaged and battery life shortened if stored or operated outside of these temperature ranges. Avoid exposing iPhone to dramatic changes in temperature or humidity. When you're using iPhone or charging the battery, it is normal for iPhone to get warm.

If the interior temperature of iPhone exceeds normal operating temperatures (for example, in a hot car or in direct sunlight for extended periods of time), you may experience the following as it attempts to regulate its temperature:

- iPhone stops charging.
- The screen dims.
- A temperature warning screen appears.
- Some apps may close.



**Important:** You may not be able to use iPhone while the temperature warning screen is displayed. If iPhone can't regulate its internal temperature, it goes into deep sleep mode until it cools. Move iPhone to a cooler location out of direct sunlight and wait a few minutes before trying to use iPhone again.

See the Apple Support article [Keeping iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch within acceptable operating temperatures](#).

## Find more resources for iPhone software and service

Refer to the following resources to get more iPhone-related safety, software, and service information.

DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

To learn about	Do this
Using iPhone safely	See <a href="#">Important safety information for iPhone</a> .
iPhone service and support, tips, forums, and Apple software downloads	See the <a href="#">iPhone Support website</a> .
Service and support from your carrier	Contact your carrier or go to your carrier's website.
The latest information about iPhone	See the <a href="#">iPhone website</a> .
Getting personalized support (not available in all countries or regions)	See the <a href="#">Apple Support website</a> .
Managing your Apple ID account	Sign in to your <a href="#">Apple ID account page</a> .
Using iCloud	See the <a href="#">iCloud User Guide</a> .
Using iTunes for Windows	See the <a href="#">iTunes User Guide for Windows</a> .
Using other Apple iPhone apps	See the <a href="#">App Store Support website</a> .
Finding your iPhone serial number, IMEI, ICCID, or MEID	You can find your iPhone serial number, International Mobile Equipment Identity (IMEI), Integrated Circuit Card Identifier (ICCID), or Mobile Equipment Identifier (MEID) on the iPhone packaging. Or, on iPhone, go to Settings  > General > About. See the Apple Support article <a href="#">Find the serial number or IMEI on your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch</a> .
Obtaining warranty service	First follow the advice in this guide, then see the <a href="#">iPhone Support website</a> .
Viewing iPhone regulatory information	On iPhone, go to Settings  > General > Legal & Regulatory.
Battery service	See the <a href="#">Battery Service and Recycling website</a> .
Battery performance and health	See the <a href="#">iPhone Battery and Performance website</a> .
Using iPhone in an enterprise environment	See the <a href="#">Apple at Work website</a> .

## FCC compliance statement

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

*Note:* This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation.

This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation.

If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment to an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

Changes or modifications to this product not authorized by Apple could void the electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) and wireless compliance and negate your authority to operate the product.

This product has demonstrated EMC compliance under conditions that included the use of compliant peripheral devices and shielded cables between system components. It is important that you use compliant peripheral devices and shielded cables between system components to reduce the possibility of causing interference to radios, televisions, and other electronic devices.

Responsible party (contact for FCC matters only):

Apple Inc.  
One Apple Park Way, MS 911-AHW  
Cupertino, CA 95014

USA

[apple.com/contact](https://apple.com/contact)

## ISED Canada compliance statement

This device complies with ISED Canada licence-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Operation in the band 5150–5250 MHz is only for indoor use to reduce the potential for harmful interference to co-channel mobile satellite systems.

Operation in the 5925–7125 MHz band shall not be used for control of or communications with unmanned aircraft systems.




Le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'ISDE Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes : (1) l'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage, et (2) l'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

La bande 5150–5250 MHz est réservée uniquement pour une utilisation à l'intérieur afin de réduire les risques de brouillage préjudiciable aux systèmes de satellites mobiles utilisant les mêmes canaux.

Les appareils dans la bande 5925–7125 MHz ne doivent pas être utilisés pour contrôler des systèmes d'aéronefs sans pilote ou pour communiquer avec de tels systèmes.

## Ultra Wideband information

Ultra Wideband is available on iPhone 11, iPhone 12, iPhone 13, iPhone 14 models, and iPhone XY models, and availability varies by region.

Ultra Wideband must be turned off when onboard aircraft, ships, and other prohibited regions by turning on airplane mode. To turn on airplane mode, open Control Center, then tap . You can also turn airplane mode on or off in Settings . When airplane mode is on,  appears in the status bar.

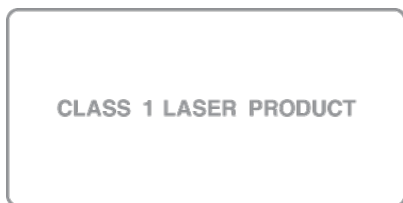


DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

*Australia:* Ultra Wideband transmitters must not be operated within a nominated distance from specified Australian radio-astronomy sites. For further information about nominated distance, please refer to the Radiocommunications (Low Interference Potential Devices) Class License 2015 published by the Australian Communications and Media Authority.

## Class 1 Laser information for iPhone

iPhone 7 and later are classified as Class 1 Laser products per IEC 60825-1 Ed. 3. These devices comply with 21 CFR 1040.10 and 1040.11, except for conformance with IEC 60825-1 Ed. 3., as described in Laser Notice No. 56, dated May 8, 2019. Caution: These devices contain one or more lasers. Use other than as described in the user guide, repair, or disassembly may cause damage, which could result in hazardous exposure to infrared laser emissions that are not visible. This equipment should be serviced by Apple or an authorized service provider.



## Apple and the environment

At Apple, we recognize our responsibility to minimize the environmental impacts of our operations and products. See our [Environment website](#).

## Disposal and recycling information for iPhone

### ***Apple Recycling Program (available in some countries or regions)***

For free recycling of your old device, a prepaid shipping label, and instructions, see the [Apple Trade In website](#).

### ***Disposal and Recycling Information***



DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL

The symbol above means that according to local laws and regulations your product and/or its battery shall be disposed of separately from household waste. When this product reaches its end of life, take it to a collection point designated by local authorities. The separate collection and recycling of your product and/or its battery at the time of disposal will help conserve natural resources and ensure that it is recycled in a manner that protects human health and the environment. For information about Apple's recycling program, recycling collection points, restricted substances, and other environmental initiatives, visit [apple.com/environment](https://apple.com/environment).

### ***Brasil – Informações sobre descarte e reciclagem***

O símbolo acima indica que este produto e/ou sua bateria não devem ser descartados no lixo doméstico. Quando decidir descartar este produto e/ou sua bateria, faça-o de acordo com as leis e diretrizes ambientais locais. Para informações sobre substâncias de uso restrito, o programa de reciclagem da Apple, pontos de coleta e telefone de informações, visite [apple.com/br/environment](https://apple.com/br/environment).

### ***Información sobre eliminación de residuos y reciclaje***

El símbolo de arriba indica que este producto y/o su batería no debe desecharse con los residuos domésticos. Cuando decidas desechar este producto y/o su batería, hazlo de conformidad con las leyes y directrices ambientales locales. Para obtener información sobre el programa de reciclaje de Apple, puntos de recolección para reciclaje, sustancias restringidas y otras iniciativas ambientales, visita [apple.com/mx/environment](https://apple.com/mx/environment) o [apple.com/la/environment](https://apple.com/la/environment).

### ***Turkey environmental information***

Türkiye Cumhuriyeti: AEEE Yönetmeliğine Uygundur.

### ***Battery service***

The lithium-ion battery in iPhone should be serviced by Apple or an authorized service provider, and must be recycled or disposed of separately from household waste. See the [Battery Service and Recycling website](#).

Dispose of batteries according to your local environmental laws and guidelines.

警告：不要刺破或焚燒。該電池不含水銀。



廢電池請回收

警告：請勿戳刺或焚燒。此電池不含汞。

# Unauthorized modification of iOS

---

iOS is designed to be reliable and secure from the moment you turn on your device. Built-in security features help protect against malware and viruses and secure user access to personal information and corporate data. Unauthorized modifications to iOS (also known as “jailbreaking”) bypass security features and can cause numerous issues such as security vulnerabilities, instability, and shortened battery life to the hacked iPhone.

- **Security vulnerabilities.** Jailbreaking your device eliminates security layers designed to protect your personal information and your iOS device. With this security removed from your iPhone, hackers may steal your personal information, damage your device, attack your network, or introduce malware, spyware, or viruses.
- **Instability.** Unauthorized modifications can cause frequent and unexpected crashes of the device, crashes and freezes of built-in apps and third-party apps, and loss of data.
- **Shortened battery life.** Hacked software can cause an accelerated battery drain that shortens the operation of iPhone on a single battery charge.
- **Unreliable voice and data.** Unauthorized modifications can cause dropped calls, slow or unreliable data connections, and delayed or inaccurate location data.
- **Disruption of services.** Services such as iCloud, iMessage, FaceTime, Apple Pay, Visual Voicemail, Weather, and Stocks, may be disrupted or no longer work on the device. Additionally, third-party apps that use the Apple Push Notification Service may experience difficulty receiving notifications or may receive notifications intended for a different device. Other push-based services, such as iCloud and Exchange, may experience problems syncing data with their respective servers.
- **Inability to apply future software updates.** Some unauthorized modifications may cause damage to iOS that is not repairable. This can result in the hacked iPhone becoming permanently inoperable when a future Apple-supplied iOS update is installed.

---

Apple strongly cautions against installing any software that modifies iOS. It is also important to note that unauthorized modification of iOS is a violation of the iOS and iPadOS Software License Agreement and because of this, Apple may deny service for an iPhone that has any unauthorized software installed.

**DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL**

Information about products not manufactured by Apple, or independent websites not controlled or tested by Apple, is provided without recommendation or endorsement. Apple assumes no responsibility with regard to the selection, performance, or use of third-party websites or products. Apple makes no representations regarding third-party website accuracy or reliability. Contact the vendor for additional information.

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Apple, the Apple logo, 3D Touch, AirDrop, AirPlay, AirPods, AirPods Pro, AirPrint, Apple Books, Apple Music, Apple Pay, Apple Podcasts, Apple TV, Apple Wallet, Apple Watch, CarPlay, EarPods, Face ID, FaceTime, Finder, Find My, Flyover, Freeform, Guided Access, Handoff, HomeKit, HomePod, iMessage, iPad, iPad Air, iPad mini, iPadOS, iPad Pro, iPhone, iPod, iPod touch, iTunes, Keychain, Keynote, Lightning, Live Photos, Mac, macOS, Magic Keyboard, MagSafe, Memoji, Numbers, Pages, QuickTake, Safari, Siri, Touch ID, TrueDepth, True Tone, tvOS, and watchOS are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries and regions.

AirPods Max, AirTag, App Clip Code, App Clips, Multi-Touch, and SharePlay are trademarks of Apple Inc.

Apple Arcade, Apple News, Apple News+, App Store, Genius, iCloud, iCloud Drive, iCloud Keychain, and iTunes Store are service marks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries and regions.

Apple Fitness+, Apple One, and ICLOUD+ are service marks of Apple Inc.

Apple

One Apple Park Way  
Cupertino, CA 95014  
[apple.com](https://apple.com)

Beats, the b logo, Beats Solo, Beats Solo Pro, Beats Studio, BeatsX, Powerbeats, Powerbeats Pro, and Solo are trademarks of Beats Electronics, LLC registered in the U.S. and other countries and regions.

Beats Flex is a trademark of Beats Electronics, LLC.

IOS is a trademark or registered trademark of Cisco in the U.S. and other countries and regions and is used under license.

The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Apple is under license.

Other company and product names mentioned herein may be trademarks of their respective companies.

Every effort has been made to ensure that the information in this manual is accurate. Apple is not responsible for printing or clerical errors.

Some apps and features are not available in all areas. App and feature availability is subject to change.

Copyright © 2023 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Apple, the Apple logo, 3D Touch, AirDrop, AirPlay, AirPods, AirPods Pro, AirPrint, Apple Books, Apple Music, Apple Pay, Apple Podcasts, Apple TV, Apple Wallet, Apple Watch, CarPlay, EarPods, Face ID, FaceTime, Finder, Find My, Flyover, Freeform, Guided Access, Handoff, HomeKit, HomePod, iMessage, iPad, iPad Air, iPad mini, iPadOS, iPad Pro, iPhone, iPod, iPod touch, iTunes, Keychain, Keynote, Lightning, Live Photos, Mac, macOS, Magic Keyboard, MagSafe, Memoji, Numbers, Pages, QuickTake, Safari, Siri, Touch ID, TrueDepth, True Tone, tvOS, and watchOS are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries and regions.

AirPods Max, AirTag, App Clip Code, App Clips, Multi-Touch, and SharePlay are trademarks of Apple Inc.

Apple Arcade, Apple News, Apple News+, App Store, Genius, iCloud, iCloud Drive, iCloud Keychain, and iTunes Store are service marks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries and regions.

**DRAFT: APPLE CONFIDENTIAL**

Apple Fitness+, Apple One, and ICLOUD+ are service marks of Apple Inc.

Apple  
One Apple Park Way  
Cupertino, CA 95014  
[apple.com](https://apple.com)

Beats, the b logo, Beats Solo, Beats Solo Pro, Beats Studio, Beats<sup>X</sup>, Powerbeats, Powerbeats Pro, and Solo are trademarks of Beats Electronics, LLC registered in the U.S. and other countries and regions.

Beats Flex is a trademark of Beats Electronics, LLC.

IOS is a trademark or registered trademark of Cisco in the U.S. and other countries and regions and is used under license.

The Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Apple is under license.

Other company and product names mentioned herein may be trademarks of their respective companies.

Every effort has been made to ensure that the information in this manual is accurate. Apple is not responsible for printing or clerical errors.

Some apps and features are not available in all areas. App and feature availability is subject to change.